# EASTERN ARMENIAN <br> For the English-speaking World 



## ๆกпU. UU.pusu.

#  

<br>

## DORA SAKAYAN

# EASTERN ARMENIAN 

For the English-speaking World
A CONTRASTIVE APPROACH

〈S凡 809．198．1
母U～81．2之
U 294
 funphnnh 2007p．hnlumtưptrph 17－h Ghuunnu：

Recommended for publication by the Senate of the Armenian Philology Faculty at Yerevan State University on October 17， 2007.

Sakayan，Dora 1931 －
© 2007 Dora Sakayan

1．Armenian language（Eastern version）．
2．Contrastive linguistics（Armenian－English contrasts）

ISBN 978－5－8084－08 90－6

Artwork inside the textbook by ARTO
All rights reserved．
No part of this book may be reproduced in any form．

Printed in Armenia
Yerevan State University Press， 2007

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to express my deepest gratitude to all those, friends and colleagues, who offered encouragement and advice during the preparation of this textbook. I especially appreciated the feedback I received in the final stage of this project from my colleagues at Yerevan State University. I wish to thank in particular

- the distinguished Orientalist Arman Akopian, who, on a diplomatic mission in Canada, kindly volunteered to read the manuscript and responded with valuable suggestions;
- Professor Hrachik Mirzoyan who carried out the initial copy-editing of the Armenian text;
- Professor Sergey Galstyan who examined, edited and evaluated the linguistic corpus of the book with utmost care;
- Professor Samvel Muradyan for reading and approving the appended literary material;
- Associate Professor Svetlana Vardanian for the final copy-editing of the entire textbook.

I am also indebted to the Armenologist Davit Gyulzadyan for the proofreading of the Armenian sections, Hasmik Gulakyan and Zareh Tjeknavorian for their assistance during the production of the attached CD, as well as Maro Manavian for professional help with the layout of this textbook.

Dora Sakayan
Yerevan, 2007

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit Contents ..... ix
Foreword ..... xiii
Preface ..... XV
The Armenian Alphabet ..... xxii
Introductory Unit ..... XXV
Unit 1 ..... 1
Unit 2 ..... 23
Unit 3 ..... 45
Unit 4 ..... 67
Unit 5 ..... 89
Unit 6 ..... 115
Unit 7 ..... 143
Unit 8 ..... 169
Unit 9 ..... 197
Unit 10 ..... 219
Unit 11 ..... 247
Unit 12 ..... 275
Appendix ..... 299
Gambits ..... 301
Grammar Tables ..... 325
Readings
About Armenia ..... 363
Articles from Newspapers ..... 373
Armenian Fables ..... 383
Armenian Fairy Tales ..... 391
Armenian Humor ..... 398
Excerpts from Armenian Prose ..... 403
Armenian Poems in Translation ..... 433
Armenian-English Glossary ..... 461
English-Armenian Glossary ..... 501
Bibliography ..... 527
Index ..... 529
Short Biography ..... 536

## UNIT CONTENTS

## Unit 1

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Requesting and receiving personal information ..... 2
Vocabulary: 1. Countries, their people and languages ..... 6
2. Cardinal numerals ..... 8
Grammar: VERBS: 1.The Armenian infinitive ..... 10
2. The indicative mood ..... 10
a) the present tense of regular verbs ..... 11
b) the present tense of some irregular verbs ..... 12
3. Uses of the present tense ..... 13
Nouns: 1. The definite article ..... 13
2. The indefinite article ..... 14
Armenian-English Contrasts: Armenian equivalents of the English you ..... 15
Word Formation: Derivations from country names ..... 16
Pronunciation: Armenian word accentuation. ..... 17
Orthography: Punctuation marks ..... 18
Writing:  ..... 19

## Unit 2

Speech Acts in Dialogues: 1. Identifying things and persons ..... 24
2. Affirming and denying states and actions ..... 25
Vocabulary: 1. Rooms and furniture ..... 28
2. Classroom items ..... 29
Grammar: VERBS: Formation of the negative forms of verbs 1. Irregular verbs ..... 30
2. Regular verbs ..... 30
Nouns: Formation of the plural ..... 32
Armenian-English Contrasts: Word order in Armenian sentences (inversion) ..... 34
Word Formation: Formation of compound nouns ..... 36
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{\rho}, \boldsymbol{\Pi} \boldsymbol{\mu}$, and $\boldsymbol{\phi} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ ..... 37
Orthography: Exclamation marks ..... 38
Writing:  ..... 39

## Unit 3

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Making requests and responding to them ..... 46
Vocabulary:Food50
Grammar: VERBS: 1. Armenian equivalents of the English to be ..... 52
2. The indicative imperfect tense ..... 52
Possession: Possessive adjectives, possessive articles, and possessive pronouns ..... 54
Armenian-English Contrasts: Gender in Armenian ..... 57
Word Formation: 1. Derivation of abstract nouns ..... 58
2. Derivation of nouns denoting locations ..... 59
Pronunciation: The letters 9 q, $\mathbf{4} \boldsymbol{4}$, and $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{p}$. ..... 60
Orthography: $\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{t}$ or $\boldsymbol{5} \boldsymbol{5}$ ..... 61
Writing:  ..... 62
Unit 4
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Introducing family and friends ..... 68
Vocabulary: Family and relatives ..... 72
Grammar Verbs: The aorist (simple past) ..... 74
Nouns: 1. The declension paradigm ..... 77
2. The nominative and accusative cases ..... 78
Armenian-English Contrasts: Some Armenian expressions of politeness ..... 80
Word Formation: Diminutives ..... 82
Pronunciation:  ..... 83
Orthography: $\boldsymbol{\cap}$ п or $\boldsymbol{O}$ о ? ..... 84
Writing:  ..... 85
Unit 5
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Asking for opinion and expressing one ..... 90
Vocabulary: Clothing, colors ..... 94
Grammar: Verbs: The perfect and pluperfect tenses ..... 96
Nouns: 1. Declension types ..... 100
2. The genitive and dative cases ..... 102
Armenian-English Contrasts: 1. Impersonal sentences ..... 105
2. Expressions of like and dislike ..... 106
Word Formation: Vowel alterations and mutations ..... 107
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\|} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ ..... 109
Orthograpy: blu, $\boldsymbol{L}_{4}$ or $\boldsymbol{L}$ ? ..... 110

## Unit 6

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Asking about and telling time ..... 116
Vocabulary: Time expressions ..... 120
Grammar: VERBS: 1. The future and the future imperfect ..... 124
2. The imperative mood ..... 126
Nouns: The ablative case ..... 128
Numerals: 1. Ordinal numerals ..... 131
2. Distributive numerals ..... 132
3. Fractional numerals ..... 133
Armenian-English Contrasts: Interrogative sentences ..... 134
Word Formation: Formation of nouns denoting persons ..... 135
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{\boldsymbol { J }} \boldsymbol{\delta}$, and $\boldsymbol{8} \boldsymbol{g}$. ..... 136
Orthography: Armenian syllabification and the transitory vowel [ ${ }^{2}$ ] ..... 137
Unit 7
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Discussing health and well-being ..... 144
Vocabulary: Body parts ..... 148
Grammar: VErbs: 1. The subjunctive mood ..... 150
2. The passive voice ..... 154
Nouns: The instrumental case ..... 156
Armenian-English Contrasts: Prepositions and postpositions ..... 158
Word Formation: Derivation of verbs. ..... 160
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{\perp} \boldsymbol{Q}, \boldsymbol{\sim}$, and $\boldsymbol{q}$ ..... 163
Orthography: $\boldsymbol{f}$ п or $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ ? ..... 164
Unit 8
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Describing and comparing people and things ..... 170
Vocabulary: 1. Profession ..... 174
2. Adjectives, antonyms ..... 176
Grammar: Verbs: 1. The mandative mood ..... 177
2. The nominalized infinitive ..... 182
Adjectives: 1. Functions of adjectives ..... 184
2. Comparison ..... 184
Pronouns: Declension of personal pronouns ..... 186
Armenian-English Contrasts: The Armenian deictic system ..... 187
Word Formation: Formation of adjectives ..... 188
Pronunciation: Armenian 'diphthongs' ..... 190
Orthography: The spelling of Armenian 'diphtongs' ..... 191

## Unit 9

Speech Acts in Dialogues Discussing weather ..... 198
Vocabulary: Nature, flowers, trees, animals ..... 202
Grammar: VERBS: 1. Resultative constructions ..... 205
2. Phrasal or two-part verbs ..... 207
Nouns: The locative case ..... 209
PRONOUNS: Interrogative and relative pronouns ..... 210
Armenian-English Contrasts: The relative pronoun $\boldsymbol{n}_{\boldsymbol{\mu}}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ ..... 211
Word formation Formation of adverbials ..... 212
Pronunciation: Connecting words that belong together (liaison) ..... 213
Orthography: Hyphenation in Armenian ..... 215
Unit 10
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Extending and accepting invitations ..... 220
Vocabulary: Holidays and recreation ..... 223
Grammar: Verbs: The hypothetical mood ..... 224
Pronouns: Reciprocal, possessive, definite pronouns ..... 230
Syntax: Simple sentences in Armenian ..... 232
Armenian-English Contrasts: Negation in Armenian ..... 234
Word Formation: Formation of participles ..... 236
Pronunciation: The vowel -г [ə] ..... 240
Orthography: Punctuation marks ..... 241
Unit 11
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Planning leisure time and vacations ..... 248
Vocabulary: City and country ..... 252
Grammar: Syntax: The structure of sentences ..... 255
Armenian-English Contrasts: Government of verbs and adjectives ..... 260
Word Formation: Two-word compounds ..... 266
Pronunciation: Interjections ..... 267
Orthography: Capitalizing words ..... 268
Unit 12
Speech Acts in Dialogues: Discussing news ..... 276
Vocabulary: Media and news ..... 280
Grammar: Syntax: Direct and indirect speech ..... 282
Armenian-English Contrasts: Nominalizations in Armenian ..... 285
Word formation: Reduplication in Armenian ..... 288
Pronunciation: Double consonants ..... 291
Orthography: Rendering English words into Armenian ..... 293

## FOREWORD

For Armenologists in and outside Armenia, Dora Sakayan does not need introduction. She is the author of several Armenological studies, and the present textbook, Eastern Armenian for the English-speaking World, is the sister edition of an earlier textbook of hers, Modern Western Armenian for the English-speaking World. Published in Montreal, Canada, in 2000, this manual was very well received all over the world.

The present textbook aims at teaching Eastern Armenian, the official language of the Republic of Armenia, to adult beginners. Though the manual is not written specifically with students of Armenian descent in mind, its importance for the younger generations of Diaspora Armenians cannot be stressed enough. It allows them to improve their own linguistic skills and discover the language of their faraway homeland, especially if their parents and family friends spoke West Armenian. Since Armenian outside Armenia could rightly be considered an endangered language, Sakayan's twin textbooks not only fill a vast gap, but also contribute to the preservation outside its tiny political borders of a language so important for Indo-European research and patristic studies.

Each line of this textbook reveals both the skilled educator and the learned scholar, but it is not just a matter of having an in-depth knowledge of the language, extensive classroom experience and thorough training in modern teaching methods. Sakayan also displays a rare and much-coveted talent for knowing how to properly organize her teaching material, how to select the best-suited approach for a given topic and, last but not least, where to find the texts that provide each chapter with a culturally-enriching supplement.

Sakayan has found the most productive way of promoting communication skills for both oral and written performances. She has succeeded in incorporating a vast amount of linguistic material into a single textbook by distributing that material methodically among the 12 proportionally structured units. Each of these units deals with a special topic and usually consists of 12 sections of its own in which linguistic phenomena of various levels are discussed in a consistent order. All units start with a dialogue that is followed by an easy-to-comprehend narrative text. After the dialogue come sections of a thematically organized vocabulary, pertinent grammatical explanations, pronunciation, calligraphy, orthography, and word formation. Though each unit includes a specific section on ArmenianEnglish contrasts, the similarities and differences between the two languages are continuously pointed out and, whenever possible, principles of contrastive linguistics are invoked

## Foreword

to provide explanations. The units end with the listing of a few topic-related proverbs, which present ethnographic snapshots of the Armenian nation.

As the dialogues expand and the linguistic material becomes richer and more versatile, learners, before they realize it, have acquired an appreciable degree of communicative competence. Reading skills are also progressively developed through a special Romanization method that makes the Armenian script easy to master. At first, texts are read and understood with the help of the section "New Words and Expressions" provided after each text, but this becomes less and less necessary as learners expand their lexicons. The teaching of reading skills gets in addition a cultural overtone through the selection of texts that give a glimpse at Armenian history, folklore, and civilization.

Another positive feature of this textbook - a ground-breaking one to my knowledge for foreign language textbooks published in Armenia — is the accompanying CD, produced by the author for self-study. Since the texts are read by native speakers of East Armenian, this CD will prove indispensable for mastering East Armenian pronunciation.

The appendix is rich in reference material. The first chapter contains a host of pragmatically organized conversational expressions, and the second chapter features useful grammar tables. The final items of the appendix are the two glossaries, Armenian-English and English-Armenian. The most remarkable part of the appendix, however, is the central part, which consists of an anthology of carefully collected samples of East Armenian prose narratives and poetry. Students have the opportunity not only to familiarize themselves with masterpieces of Armenian literature, but also to read them in the original language. A selected number of poems are provided with an English translation, either reproduced from existing publications or penned by Sakayan. In addition to the literary texts, newspaper articles, medieval fables, and fairy tales have been introduced to give an idea of the gamut of styles in which the Armenian language can appear.

Time now to bring these "Few Words" to a close and express to Professor Sakayan my envious admiration for her vigor and unflagging energy, wish her textbook a successful journey, and hope to have the opportunity of welcoming from her more such high quality publications in the near future.

Professor Sergey Galstyan<br>Doctor of Philology<br>Department of Armenian Language Yerevan State University

## PREFACE

## About this Textbook

Eastern Armenian for the English-speaking World is an introductory, yet complete first-year course for adults in the English-speaking world. It is a handbook for both the prospective teacher and the student of Armenian. However, the full guidance given in this textbook will allow motivated learners to use it for self-instruction as well.

Of the two existing versions of standard Armenian, Eastern (EA) and Western (WA), this textbook deals with Eastern Armenian, the official language of the Republic of Armenia (see pp. xix-xx).

This book incorporates the recent achievements of applied linguistics into the instruction of EA. While many modern foreign-language textbooks have drawn on these insights, textbooks on Armenian have not kept pace with the new trends. This textbook differs from other Armenian manuals in many ways.

1. Although grammar is treated as an important aspect in mastering the language, other linguistic areas also receive attention. The main body of the book includes 12 units, each of which contains the following sections:

I Dialogues
II Text
III New Words and Expressions
IV Thematic Groups of Words
V Grammar (Morphology and Syntax)
VI Armenian-English Contrasts
VII Word Formation
VIII Pronunciation
IX Orthography
X Writing
XI Exercises
XII Proverbs
This structure is maintained in all units, guaranteeing a smooth progression in the mastering of EA. Grammar (morphology and syntax) in this book is not a goal in itself, but a means of achieving "communicative competence." Grammatical categories are selected and carefully introduced in each unit in accordance with their functionality. Furthermore, an organ-

## Preface

ized section of grammatical tables is appended to the book for reference. Cross-references in each unit reinforce the students' cognitive knowledge of Armenian grammar.
2. The textbook is conceptualized pragmatically, aiming at active rather than passive knowledge. Its main goal is to enable students to interact in Armenian by carrying out fundamental speech acts, such as making a request and responding to it, expressing agreement or disagreement, conveying information and reacting to it, seeking an opinion and expressing one, asking for advice and giving it, etc. Students will learn how to engage in small talk about health, weather, and so on. Each unit opens with Dialogues, a short exchange of utterances used in a given situation. Dialogues focus on a particular speech act that evokes normally anticipated responses. The idea is to promote oral skills for recurring everyday situations. Learning to apply linguistic material to innumerable universal lifesettings is the main goal of Dialogues. This section is supported by a special division in the Appendix under the heading Gambits (see p. 301). These are conventionally accepted expressions to be used as tools for communication. GAMBITS are arranged according to the speech acts they carry out, and are provided as useful material for memorization. Students are presented with Gambits as lexical units, regardless of their grammatical complexity. Familiarity with complex Gambits will help students to internalize grammatical forms.
3. Texts are short reading passages of various origins. Some are selected and adapted from existing Armenian textbooks. Others are written by the author of this textbook. Texts enrich the vocabulary of students and develop their narrative and descriptive skills. They can be reinforced through a systematic analysis and thorough discussion in class. To acquaint students with Armenian folklore, each unit includes a few Armenian proverbs with their English translation. Proverbs are thematically and structurally related to the main topic of each unit. Vocabulary drawn from each Text appears in translation in New Words and Expressions. The section Thematic Groups of Words will expand students' active and passive vocabulary.
4. This book places special emphasis on Armenian-English contrasts. All discussions in the book's various sections are based on such a contrastive approach. A special section, Armenian-English Contrasts, explains Armenian idiosyncrasies at various linguistic levels that might otherwise escape the students' - and in some cases even the teacher's - attention. Translations from and into English also play a role in revealing linguistic contrasts. Explanations are given throughout the book in English.
5. Word Formation, an essential but often overlooked area in language instruction, is given proper treatment. Each unit discusses derivation, composition or inversion patterns that are productive in certain word classes in Armenian. The advantage of this approach is

## Preface

enormous: Students learn to recognize and analyze the basic elements of words. As they progress, students also learn to create new words by analogy with models they have already learned. A special table in the GRAMMAR ApPENDIX gives an overview of affixes (prefixes and suffixes) that are productive in the formation of various word classes.
6. Armenian is by no means a common language. For the majority of students who undertake the study of Armenian, it can be a great challenge, especially in view of its unique alphabet. In order to overcome difficulties with spelling and pronunciation, a special system of transcription-romanization has been created. To ease both the spelling and the pronunciation of Eastern Armenian words, this transcription system takes into account not only graphic correspondences, but also phonetic subtleties of Armenian. A special trait of this romanization system is that it inserts the vowel [ə] (schwa) not only in all positions where it is spelled by the letter ${ }_{\boldsymbol{L}}$, but also where it is not written but pronounced as a transitory sound, which is indicated by [ ${ }^{\circ}$. This approach facilitates the reading of certain Armenian words with consonant clusters. For example, the Armenian male name $\boldsymbol{V}$ [ $\left.\mathrm{M}^{\rho} \mathrm{k}^{\curvearrowright} \mathrm{rtich}^{\mathrm{h}}\right]$ consists of five consonants and only one vowel, but constitutes three syllables. This is due to the transitory vowel [ə] that is not written but pronounced between consonants.

In the first half of the 12 units, almost all newly introduced words and texts are transcribed. In the second half, however, transcription is used more sparingly, disappearing gradually towards the end of the book. At this point, students are expected to have mastered the skill of reading Armenian. One could argue that the transcription should have been eliminated at a much earlier stage. However, it was maintained for two reasons: First, to facilitate cross-referencing throughout the book; second, to provide additional direction to students working without the guidance of a teacher.
7. Along with square brackets [...] used for transcription, parentheses (...) are often used as structural (morpho-syntactic) glosses in English. The glosses (see 3. below) explain those Armenian phrase and sentence structures that are fundamentally different from the free English translation (see 4. below), presented in italics. The structural glosses illustrate differences in word order, case, number, etc. As a result, a phrase or a sentence may appear in four lines:

1. Armenian text:
2. Transcription:
3. Structural gloss:
4. Free English translation:

## 

[Amran arevə kizich ${ }^{\mathbf{h}}$ e]
(Summer ${ }_{\text {gen }}$ sun-the ${ }_{\text {nom }}$ scorching is)
Summer sun is scorching.
8. The section Writing introduces the 38 letters of the Armenian alphabet throughout the first four units. Letters are presented as calligraphic samples with their printed and translit-

## Preface

erated counterparts. However, this should not prevent students from practicing writing at a much earlier stage, using the samples provided with the Armenian alphabet (see pp. xxii-xiii). Writing skills need to be developed throughout the entire learning progress.
9. Each unit has a section of ExERCISES which draws on newly acquired knowledge or reviews linguistic material from previous units. All ExERCISES, both traditional and innovative, aim at the development of communicative competence. To ensure the crucial shift from traditional third-person narrative sentences - which are often isolated and unrelated — to interactions containing "I" and "you," communicative exercises have been introduced. These are exercises based on micro-dialogues, patterns of two or more interlocking utterances that consist of a stimulus by speaker A and a response by speaker B, and vice versa. The micro-dialogues contain recurring routine expressions, i.e. Gambits (see p. 301), and a variable lexical-grammatical content, i.e. vocabulary and grammatical forms, that have already been learned. The student is asked to modify the variable content using the pattern given for each communicative exercise. In a more creative type of communicative exercise, students are instructed to produce certain speech acts and to react to them in simulated real-life settings. For instance, they are asked to initiate polite requests and to react with adequate responses in Armenian. This type of communicative exercise ensures the meaningful practice of forms and structures necessary for successful interaction. Most of these communicative exercises are designed for oral work in class and should be supervised by the teacher. Only selected exercises could be assigned as homework after careful preparation by the instructor in class. This applies especially to the initial stages of instruction.
10. The purpose of the introductory unit ( $\mathrm{p} . \mathrm{xxv}$ ) is to acquaint students with a new world of sounds and to lay the foundation for instruction in East Armenian.
11. The Appendix, which follows the 12 units, constitutes the next half of this textbook. It contains a collection of passages from masterpieces of East Armenian literature, prose, poetry, and folklore, as well as newspaper articles that offer an insight into Armenian culture and civilization. Most of the poems appear in English translation. The Gambits section represents an important part of East Armenian routine expressions, some useful tools for every-day communication. Tables give an overview of East Armenian grammar, and an Armenian-English and English-Armenian Glossary with each entry romanized aids in independent study. A vast Bibliography of academic books on East Armenian grammar used in this textbook is also annexed. The textbook ends with a subject Index.
12. The textbook is accompanied by a CD in which the sections Dialogues (I), Texts (II), and Pronunciation (VIII) are systematically recorded. Some additional texts from the Appendix, both prose and poetry, are also read by native speakers of Armenia.

## On the Armenian Language, the Armenian Alphabet and the Subtleties of the Two Varieties, East and West Armenian

1. Armenian is an ancient yet vibrant language that represents its own independent branch in the Indo-European family of languages. The six million people who speak Armenian around the world have been divided geographically and linguistically into two communities, the Eastern and the Western. Accordingly, as a literary language, Armenian exists in two versions: East Armenian (EA) and West Armenian (WA). EA is based on the dialect of the Ararat valley and the city of Yerevan; WA originates from the Armenian dialect of Istanbul. EA is the official language of the Republic of Armenia, as well as the language of Armenians living in the former Soviet Union, Iran, and India. WA is the language of the greater Armenian diaspora throughout the Middle East, Asia Minor, Europe, Australia, and the Americas. Since 1991, however, the year when the independent Republic of Armenia was established, many Armenians have left their country and settled in the West. It is thus difficult to draw a strict distinction between East and West Armenian communities, since the diaspora increasingly uses both varieties of Armenian. Differences between the two versions manifest themselves in both grammar and vocabulary, but most significantly in pronunciation. Orthography also differs: While in the early years of Soviet Armenia a simplifying spelling reform was adopted for EA, rules of traditional orthography as found in Grabar, the Classical Armenian, were preserved in WA. All these differences do not, however, greatly hinder communication between Armenians of different backgrounds.
2. The Armenian alphabet is a set of 38 characters unique to Armenian, used in all three of its manifestations: Classical Armenian or Grabar, EA and WA. This alphabet was developed in A.D. 405 by the cleric of the Armenian royal court, prominent scholar Saint Mesrop Mashtots. The order of the letters in the Armenian alphabet suggests that it was modeled after the Greek alphabet. Originally, the Armenian alphabet had 36 characters. However, two letters, $\boldsymbol{0}$ o and $\boldsymbol{\mathscr { Q }} \boldsymbol{\mathscr { }}$, were added in the middle ages to meet the need of writing foreign names and borrowed words. In 1922, along with revisions to the traditional orthography, the Soviet reform implemented certain changes to the Armenian alphabet. The most significant change was the outmoding of the 34th letter of the original alphabet, $\boldsymbol{h}$ $\llcorner$, and the addition of the combined graphic sign $\boldsymbol{\pi}$, for [u] in its place. The reform also supplemented the alphabet with the ligature $\boldsymbol{L}$ to replace the combination $\boldsymbol{t}+\boldsymbol{L}$. Today, the extensively used ligature $\boldsymbol{\ell}$ is officially recognized as a complementation rather than an integral part of the Armenian alphabet for EA use.

## Preface

This alphabet thirty consonants and eight vowels. Most of the letters also have numerical values (see p. xxii-xxiii).
3. Differences between the pronunciation of the Armenian alphabet in the two versions of Armenian, Eastern and Western, involve mainly the consonant system, and particularly the stops. As a result of a consonant shift, WA has deviated considerably from its phonetic origins and has shifted from a three-part to a two-part consonant system that consists of one voiced and one voiceless stop:

| (1) | щ [b] | 4 [g] | ın [d] | д [dz] | $\checkmark$ [j] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (2) | ¢, $\boldsymbol{P}$ [p] | p, 7 [k] | [ 7 , \% [t] | $\boldsymbol{d}, \boldsymbol{g} \quad[\mathrm{ts}]$ | Q, \% [ch] |

A similar two-part system can be found in other Indo-European languages. Compare the one in English:
$\mathrm{g} / \mathrm{k}$
d/t
The EA pronunciation of the Armenian alphabet corresponds phonetically to that of Classical Armenian. Each character has a distinct phonetic value, which explains the number of letters in the Armenian alphabet created by Mesrop Mashtots in A.D. 405. The EA three-part consonant system consists of one voiced stop (line 1) and two types of voiceless stops, one unaspirated (line 2) and one aspirated (line 3):

| (1) voiced stops | $\underset{F}{ }[\mathrm{~b}]$ | $4[\mathrm{~g}]$ | 7 [d] | d [dz] | 2 [j] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (2) unaspirated stops | $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{4}[\mathrm{p}]$ | 4 [k] | m [ t ] | $\dot{\delta}$ [ts] | 6 [ch] |
| (3) aspirated stops | ¢ ${ }^{\text {c }} \mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ ] | $\underset{\sim}{\boldsymbol{p}}\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}\right.$ ] | $\boldsymbol{F}\left[\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$ | $\boldsymbol{g}$ [ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | \% [ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |

Many linguists attribute this three-part consonant system, unusual for Indo-European languages, to the influence of other Caucasian languages in the region.

Sample of a Text (Universal Declaration of Human Rights, Article 1):

## Printed





## Written





## Translated

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.


| Printed | Written | Name | Romanization | Pronunciation Numeric | Value |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| U. ш | th me | ayb | [a] | as in car | 1 |
| ${ }^{+}{ }_{F}$ | $\beta p$ | ben | [b] | as in bar | 2 |
| 9.4 | q, 9 | gim | [g] | as in good | 3 |
| 7.7 |  | da | [d] | as in door | 4 |
| $t$ t | A 4 | yech ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | [ye] or [e] ${ }^{1}$ | as in yes or there | 5 |
| 24 | 2.4 | za | [z] | as in zest | 6 |
| 15 | 1t | e | [e] | as in there | 7 |
| $\llcorner\Sigma$ | $\beta \mu$ | ət ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | [ə] | as in about | 8 |
| A 18 | PR | $\mathrm{t}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{O}$ | [ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ] | as in team | 9 |
| d ${ }^{1}$ | dot | zhe | [zh] | as in pleasure | 10 |
| ${ }^{\prime} h$ | n $h$ | ini | [i] | as in bee | 20 |
| $L /$ | 11 | lyun | [1] | as in light | 30 |
| h ${ }^{\text {u }}$ | hir $u$ | khe | [kh] | as in Bach or Jose | 40 |
| \% $\%$ | \% $\%$ | tsa | [ts] | a plosive ts | 50 |
| 44 | 44 | ken | [k] | as in stock | 60 |
| $\geq 6$ | $h \mathrm{~h}$ | ho | [h] | as in hot | 70 |
| 2 a | 2 \% | dza | [dz] | as in odds | 80 |
| 2.7 | $\eta \eta$ | ghat | [gh] | as the French $\mathbf{r}$ | 90 |
| ช6 | 96 | che | [ch] | a plosive ch | 100 |
| $\boldsymbol{U}$ if | I/ If | men | [m] | as in me | 200 |
| 3 」 | 31 | he | [y] | as in yard | 300 |
| \& ¢ | $4 \%$ | nu | [n] | as in nine | 400 |
| $\boldsymbol{T}_{2}$ | 02 | sha | [sh] | as in shine | 500 |


| Printed | Written | Name | Romanization | Pronunciation Num | c Value |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ก п | ／n $n$ | vo | ［vo］or［o］${ }^{2}$ | as in vocal or for | 600 |
| 9 \＆ | 28 | $\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{a}$ | ［ $\mathrm{ch}^{\mathbf{h}}$ ］ | as in chair | 700 |
| ग\％ | サ川 | pe | ［p］ | as in copper | 800 |
| 122 | $\therefore 9$ | je | ［j］ | as in journal | 900 |
| ก．$n$ | If $n$ | ra | ［r］ | trilled＇r ${ }^{\text {＇}}$ | 1000 |
| $\boldsymbol{U}$ « | ／／u | se | ［s］ | as in say | 2000 |
| 山 4 | 4.4 | vev | ［v］ | as in vase | 3000 |
| $\boldsymbol{\sim}$ | III in | tyun | ［t］ | as in rotten | 4000 |
| $\bigcirc 1$ | $\rho \mu$ | re | ［r］ | liquid＇$r$＇ | 5000 |
| 3 g | $4 y$ | $\mathrm{ts}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{o}$ | ［ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | as in lots | 6000 |
| $\cap_{\llcorner } \boldsymbol{\pi}$ | Ml ne | u | ［u］ | as in tool | 7000 |
| ¢ ¢ | th it | $p^{\text {b }}$ yur | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}}$ ］ | as in paper | 8000 |
| $\sim_{0} \mathrm{p}$ | $p \gamma$ | $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{e}}$－ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | as in kind | 9000 |
| 0 。 | 00 | o | ［o］${ }^{3}$ | as in all |  |
| 84 | 88 | fe | ［f］ | as in file ${ }^{4}$ |  |
| NOTES |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1．On the pronunciation of $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{t}$ see p． 61 ． <br> 2．On the pronunciation of $\boldsymbol{n} n$ see p． 84 ． |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3．The last two letter， $\boldsymbol{O}$ o and $\boldsymbol{\&} \boldsymbol{\Phi}$ ，do not have a numeric value，since they are later additions to the alphabet． |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4．There is an additional letter，the ligament $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \boldsymbol{w h i c h}$ ，although widely used in East Armenian，does not con－ stitute an integral part of the alphabet（see pp．xix and 110）．The ligament $\boldsymbol{\iota}$ has no capital counterpart． It is pronounced：a）［yev］in initial position and after vowels（cf． $\boldsymbol{\ell}[\mathrm{yev}]$ and，$\uparrow \boldsymbol{\varkappa} \boldsymbol{l} \boldsymbol{k}$［nayev］also）． <br> b）$[\mathrm{ev}]$ in medial and final position of words after consonants（cf．ml／L［arev］sun） <br>  ［yevropakan］European．In word formation，this $t_{\varphi}$ may also appear in medial position of words： <br>  |  |  |  |  |  |

## INTRODUCTORY UNIT

1. Etritgtip, щшгпиь ...
[Nerets ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$, paron]
Etphgtip, mithtis...
[Nerets ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$, tikin]

[Kareli e dzez mi ban harts ${ }^{\text {bə }}$ nel?]

[Anshusht]

## hiverlairs:

[Khnt ${ }^{\text {rem }}$ ]
2. Fwrit, Uwrft:
[Barev, Mari]

[Bari luys, tikin Azaryan]

[Bari yereko, oriort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Anun²t inch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{e}$ ?]

[Dzer anunə inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e?]
U.
[Anun²s Ani e]

[Azganun² Saryan e]


Excuse me, Sir ...

Excuse me, Madam ...

Of course.

Please, go ahead.

Hello, Mary.

Good morning, Mrs. Azarian.

What's your name? (formal)

My name is Ani.

My last name is Saryan.

[Du hay es?/Duk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ hay ek ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ ? ]

[Ayo, hay em]

[Vochh ${ }^{\text {b }}$, yes hay chb ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{em}$ ]

[Duk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ amerikats ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {ek }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ?]

[Duk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ amerikuhi ek ?]
 [Ayo, amerikats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i /amerikuhi em]

[Isk Annan azgut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yamb inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e?]

[Angluhi /fransuhi e]
Uшルヶ!
[Samveln el fransiats ${ }^{b}$ i e?]

[Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$, amerikats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i e]

[Isk du?]

[Yes kanadats ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{i}$ /kanaduhi em]

Are you Armenian?
(informal/formal)
Yes, I am.

No, I am not.

Are you (formal) American? (male)

Are you (formal) American? (female)

Yes, I am American (male/female).

And what (nationality) is Anna?

She is English / French (female).

Is Samuel also French (male)?

No, he is American (male).

And you?

I am Canadian (male/female).

How are you, Lilith?

How are you, Mr. Saryan?

I am fine, thanks.

And how are you? (formal)
 [Yes el lav em, sh²norhakal em]

[Ners ari, khnt ${ }^{h}$ rem]

[Ners yekek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, kh $^{2}{ }^{\text {nth }}{ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ rem]
คшгпіч டчшг/ьцшр:
[Barov yekar/yekak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
7. $U_{\text {u }} f^{\circ}$ T 5 :
[Sa inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e?]
Uи qlre 5:
[Sa girk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e]
hu4 шш:
[Isk sa?]
Uш инเипг 5:
[Sa tet ${ }^{2} \mathrm{r} \mathrm{e}$ ]

[Matit unes/unek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]

[Ayo, unem, aha]

[ $\mathrm{K}^{\text {² }}$ tas $/ \mathrm{k}^{\text {² }} \operatorname{tak}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ? ]
huturituf:
[Khnt ${ }^{\text {h }}$ rem]

[Sh² ${ }^{\text {norhakal em] }}$
$9_{\text {wl }}$ よト:
[Chªrzhe]

[Ov e ays paronə/tikinə?]

[Paron/tikin Saryann e]

I am also well, thank you.

Come in, please. (informal)

Come in, please. (formal)

You are welcome!
(informal/formal)
What is this?

This is a book.

And this?

This is a notebook.

Do you have a pencil?
(informal/formal)
Yes, I do. Here it is.

Would you (informal/formal)
give X to me?
Here you are!

Thank you!

Don't mention it!

Who is this gentleman/lady?

This is Mr./Mrs. Sarian.

## Introductory Unit


［Isk ays $\mathrm{t}^{2}$ ghan／akhch ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ik} \partial$ ？

［Sa Armenn e／Armenuhin e］

［Armenn usanogh e？Ayo！］

［Isk tikin Saryanə？］

［Na usuts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ch $^{\text {b }}$ uhi e］

## 9．\＆tphat＇p：／\＆trpirp：

［Nerets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ek／Nerir！］

［Neroghut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］

のダイレと：
［Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nch $^{\text {b }}$ ］

［Kh $h^{2} n^{b}$ rem，karevor chbe］

## 

［Ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ 2tesut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］

［M² ${ }^{2} \mathrm{~K}^{\llcorner } / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ nas barov］

9．яшр／ұヶши гшппи：
［G²ak ${ }^{\text {b }} / \mathrm{g}^{ə}$ nas barov］

［Bari gisher］

Lпレји пшгァ：
［Luys bari］

And this boy／girl？

This is Armen／Armenuhi．

Is Armen a student？Yes，he is．

And Mrs．Saryan？

She is a（female）teacher．

Excuse me．（formal／informal）

Excuse me．／Sorry．

No problem．

It＇s O．K．，don＇t mention it．

See you later！

Goodbye！（formal／informal）

Take care！＊（formal／informal）

Good night！＊＊

Good night！＊＊

[^0]
## Unit 1



## On the agenda...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Requesting and receiving personal information ..... 2
Vocabulary: 1. Countries, their people and languages ..... 6
2. Cardinal numerals ..... 8
Grammar: Verbs: 1. The Armenian infinitive ..... 10
2. The indicative mood ..... 10
a) the present tense of regular verbs ..... 11
b) the present tense of some irregular verbs ..... 12
3. Uses of the present tense indicative ..... 13
Nouns: 1. The definite article ..... 13
2. The indefinite article .....  14
Armenian-English Contrasts: Armenian equivalents of the English you ..... 15
Word Formation: Derivations from country names ..... 16
Pronunciation: Armenian word accentuation ..... 17
Orthography: Punctuation marks ..... 18
Writing:  ..... 19

## I DIALOGUES

1. B, an Armenian-speaking officer in the Canadian Embassy in Yerevan, is filling out a questionnaire for A, an Armenian citizen who does not speak English. They address each other formally.

Hello!
[Barev dzez]

Hello! What's your name?
[Barev, inch ${ }^{\text {h }}$ e dzer anunə?]

My name is Armen.
[Anun²s Armen e]

[Isk dzer azganunə?]

[Azganun²s Saryan e]

[ $K^{b}$ ani tarekan e $k^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ ?]

And your family name?
[ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ san tarekan]
 [Dzer kbaghak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ats $^{\text {b }}$ iut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yunə?]
 [Hayastani $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ aghak $^{\text {b }}$ ats $^{\text {s. }} \underbrace{i}{ }^{\text {em] }}$
 [Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ lezuner gitek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ?]
A. Kujtrits le ratutratis: [Hayeren yev riuseren]
 [ayt lezunerov nayev gərum]
 [u kart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ um ek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]

[^1]A. U. $\boldsymbol{g}^{\prime}$ :
[Ayo]

[Vorn e dzer hastss ${ }^{\text {en }}$ ?]
 [Yerevan, Paronyan $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ oghots ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ tasə]
 [Vorn e dzer herakhosi hamarə?
 [Ch'b ors haryur, hisunut ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, tasnerku]
 [Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ Ov e $^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {ə }}$ zbaghvum?]
A. Пцшшโппŋ เцீ: I am a student.
[Usanogh em]
 [Inch $\underbrace{\text { b }} \mathrm{ek}^{\text {b }}$ usumnasirum?]

[G ${ }^{ə}$ rakanut ${ }^{\text {t }}$ yun]
 [Sh²norhakal em. Azat ek ${ }^{\text {b }}$.]


Yes!

What is your address?

What is your occupation?

What are you studying?

Thank you. You are free to go.
2. $A$ is an adult, $B$ is a five-year old child who is lost. The adult addresses the child informally.

[Anun²t inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e?]

[Anuns Ani e]

[Isk azganunət?]
B. $\boldsymbol{U}_{\boldsymbol{w} / \boldsymbol{J}_{\boldsymbol{L}}:}$
[Malyan]

What is your name?

My name is Ani.

And your family name?

Malyan.

[Khani tarekan es?]

[Hing tarekan]
A. 2tr Smugts q funtiv:
[Dzer hasts ${ }^{\text {h }}$ en gites?]

[Komitas $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}}$ oghots ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ yeresun]

[Isk dzer herakhosi hamarə?]
 [ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ sanut ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, hisunmek, tasnerku]
A. U. [Apres. Hima $\mathrm{k}^{2} \mathrm{~g}^{2} \mathrm{nank}^{\mathrm{h}}$ yev]
 [ $\mathrm{k}^{2}$ zangaharenk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ dzer tun]

How old are you?

Five years old.

Do you know your (plur.) address?

Thirty Komitas Street.

And your (plur.) telephone number?

Two-eight, five-one, one-two.

Good for you! Now we'll go and
phone your home.

## II TEXT

> ¿UBUUSU'
> [Hayastan]
 [Hayastanə $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b} \partial \mathrm{r}}$ yerkir e. Ayn uni yerek $\underbrace{\mathrm{b}} \underbrace{\text { kes milyon } b^{2} \text { nakich }}$. Hayerə
 khosum en hayeren. Hayerenə hin lezu ye. Inchb pes franserenə, anglerenə, ger-
 manerenə yev ayl lezuner, hayerenə hndevropakan lezuye. Haykakan aybubenə
 hin e. Ayn steghtsel e Mesrop Mashtots ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{2} 405$ (chbors haryur hing) that ${ }^{\text {b }}$ vakanin. Hay-
 kakan aybubenn uni 38 (yeresunut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ) tar. Hayastanə amenahin kistonya



III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

|  | [Hayastan] | Armenia |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| qumpr | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{\partial r}^{\mathrm{r}}$ ] | small |
| trulir | [yerkir] | country |
| 5 | [e] | is |
|  | [unenal, uni] | to have, has |
|  | [yerek ${ }^{\text {u kes] }}$ | three and* a half |
| shlumus | [milyon] | million |
| Fsumber | [ ${ }^{\text {nakich }}{ }^{\text { }}$ ] | inhabitant |
| Sujtirct | [hayere] | the Armenians |
| [unutil | [khosel] | to speak |
| Sujtritu | [hayeren] | Armenian (language) |
| $54^{5}$ | [hin] | old |
| $L^{\text {trgm }}$ | [lezu] | language |
| \|risィutu | [inchl ${ }^{\text {p }}$ pes] | as, how |
| mirylththim | [angleren] | English (language) |
| \$pruiutirtic | [franseren] | French (language) |
| ${ }_{4}^{\text {¢ }}$ | [germaneren] | German (language) |
| 1 | [yev] | and* |
| $\omega_{J L}$ | [ayl] | other |
|  | [ h ndevropakan] | Indo-European |
|  | [haykakan] | Armenian (adjective) |
| mjpmLptis | [aybuben] | alphabet |
| سر¢ | [ayn] | it |
| untrigt ${ }_{\text {L }}$ | [steghtsel] | to create |
|  | [steghtsel e] | has created |
| \| | [ ${ }^{\text {t }}{ }^{\text {2 }}$ vakan] | date, year |
| ипшп | [tari] | letter (graphic sign) |
| wiftiumsfis | [amenahin] | (the) oldest |
| erhwunnigu | [ ${ }^{\natural}$ ristonya] | Christian |
| trultr | [yerkir] | country |
|  | [ənt ${ }^{\text {d }}$ unel] | to adopt |
|  | [ 2 nt ${ }^{\text {unel }}$ e] | has adopted |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ristoneyut ${ }^{\text {d }}$ yun] | Christianity |

Unit 1
IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

| 1．COUNTRIES，THEIR PEOPLE AND LANGUAGES |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Country | Male | Female | Language | Adjective |
| 〈шјшипшโ | 政 | ¢шлппヶ¢ | Smjtritis |  |
| ［Hayastan］ | ［hay］ | ［hayuhi］ | ［hayeren］ | ［haykakan／hay］ |
| Armenia | Armenian | Armenian | Armenian | Armenian |
| U．sttrerum | miftrertugh | miftrritmest |  | แuftrrity |
| ［Amerika］ | ［amerikats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i］ | ［amerikuhi］ | ［angleren］ | ［amerikyan］ |
| America | American | American | English | American |
| पшโшшгш | 4шโшшгшу |  |  | чшโшишцшโ |
| ［Kanada］ | ［kanadats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | ［kanaduhi］ | ［angleren／franseren］ | ［kanadakan］ |
| Canada | Canadian | Canadian | English／French | Canadian |
| U．Lryifium | wLutihugh |  |  |  |
| ［Anglia］ | ［angliats ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［angluhi］ | ［angleren］ | ［angliakan］ |
| England | English | English | English | English |
| กппшшшยпะ | пппи | ппй | ппLutirtis | ппะшш¢ш์ |
| ［Ṙusastan］ | ［rus］ | ［rus］ | ［ruseren］ | ［rusakan］ |
| Russia | Russian | Russian | Russian | Russian |
|  |  |  | \＄rıututrisu |  |
| ［Fransia］ | ［fransiats ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［fransuhi］ | ［franseren］ | ［fransiakan］ |
| France | French | French | French | French |
|  |  |  |  | ${ }_{\text {¢ }}^{\text {¢ }}$ ¢ |
| ［Germania］ | ［germanatst ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［germanuhi］ | ［germaneren］ | ［germanakan］ |
| Germany | German | German | German | German |
| Һппшехй | ¢ипшıш浐 |  |  | ｜ипш！шиши |
| ［Italia］ | ［italatss ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［italuhi］ | ［italeren］ | ［italakan］ |
| Italy | Italian | Italian | Italian | Italian |
| Һшшшธциш | ¢шщшโшшя |  |  | ршшшโшишк |
| ［Ispania］ | ［ispanats ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［ispanuhi］ | ［ispaneren］ | ［ispanakan］ |
| Spain | Spaniard | Spaniard | Spanish | Spanish |
| Q¢¢шшипшโ | zfinugh | zhimusth | ¢finuritu |  |
| ［Chb inastan］ | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ inats ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［ch＇inuhi］ | ［ch＇binaren］ | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ inakan］ |
| China | Chinese | Chinese | Chinese | Chinese |
| ชัшщп¢ைи | 6шщпโшй |  |  | бшщпโшицш์ |
| ［Chaponia］ | ［chaponatss ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | ［chaponuhi］ | ［chaponeren］ | ［chaponakan］ |
| Japan | Japanese | Japanese | Japanese | Japanese |

Unit 1


## 2．Cardinal Numerals

Like other languages，Armenian uses Arabic numbers，1，2，3，etc．，for cardinal numerals． Cardinal numerals denote quantity，size，measurement，etc．，and in Armenian answer the question $\boldsymbol{p}^{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \boldsymbol{f}^{\circ}$［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ani？］how many？The Armenian wording for these symbols is present－


| 2．CARDINAL NUMERALS |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | ¢54 | ［mek］ | 31 | trıtunciuftu | ［yeresunmek］ |
| 2 | trime | ［yerku］ | 32 | tritumLitirum | ［yeresunerku］ |
| 3 | $t_{\text {trater }}$ | ［yerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | 33 |  | ［yeresunerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 4 | 2пlu | ［chb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ，${ }^{\text {d }}$ ］ | 34 |  | ［yeresunch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ors］ |
| 5 | Spistr | ［hing］ | 35 |  | ［yeresunhing］ |
| 6 | 4 lty | ［vets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 36 | tritumLiulty | ［yeresunvets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 7 | 」n／す | ［ $\mathrm{yot}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 37 |  | ［yeresunyot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 8 | пと\％ | ［ $\mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | 38 |  | ［yeresunut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 9 | hiscu（or Mist） | ［in ${ }^{\text {n }}$ ］（ or［inə］） | 39 |  | ［yeresunin ${ }^{\text {n }}$（－inə） |
| 10 | ппшиรи（or шпшцг） | ［tas ${ }^{\text {n }}$ ］（ or［tasə］） | 40 | ршпшипนะ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {a }}$ arasun］ |
| 11 |  | ［tasn²mek］ | 50 | ShumLis | ［hisun］ |
| 12 |  | ［tasnerku］ | 60 |  | ［vat ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sun］ |
| 13 |  | ［tasnerek ${ }^{\text {］}}$ ］ | 70 |  | ［yot ${ }^{\mathbf{t}}$ anasun］ |
| 14 |  | ［ $\operatorname{tasn}^{2} \mathrm{ch}^{\text {b }}$ ors］ | 80 | пи｜дипик | ［ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sun］ |
| 15 |  | ［tasn ${ }^{\text {hing }}$ ］ | 90 | ［¢¢¢ипи¢ | ［inn ${ }^{\text {s }}$ sun］ |
| 16 | mшuиulty | ［ $\operatorname{tasn}{ }^{2}$ vetst ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 100 |  | ［haryur］ |
| 17 | ншшиโллп｜\％ |  | 200 |  | ［yerku haryur］ |
| 18 |  | ［ $\operatorname{tasn}^{2} \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{m}}$ ］ | 300 |  | ［yerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ haryur］ |
| 19 | шшшиц¢¢й |  | 400 |  | ［ch＇b ors haryur］ |
| 20 | ришци | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ san］ | 500 |  | ［hing haryur］ |
| 21 | ришโиீ库 | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {a }}$ sanmek］ | 600 |  | ［vets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ haryur］ |
| 22 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ sanerku］ | 700 |  | ［yot haryur］ |
| 23 | $p^{\text {unutipltep }}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ sanerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 800 |  | ［ut haryur］ |
| 24 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ sanch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ors］ |  |  | ［inn haryur］ |
| 25 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ sanhing］ | 1000 | 泣频 | ［hazar］ |
| 26 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ sanvet $\mathrm{S}^{\text {d }}$ ］ | 1001 |  | ［hazar mek］ |
| 27 | решโ！п！ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ sanyot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 1002 |  | ［hazar yerku］ |
| 28 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ sanut ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ］ | 2000 | tr¢пп ¢шqш！ | ［yerku hazar］ |
| 29 |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ sanin $^{2} \mathrm{n}$ ］or［－inə］ | 3000 |  | ［yerek ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ hazar］ |
| 30 | trıturnis | ［yeresun］ | 1000 | ипшуг ¢шчши | ［tasə hazar］ |

## Unit 1



## V GRAMMAR

## A. VERBS

## I. The Armenian infinitive

To conjugate an Armenian verb, it is important to know its uninflected form, i.e. the infinitive, which is the basic form of verbs as found in dictionaries. The Armenian infinitive consists of two elements: the verb stem and the infinitive ending. The infinitive of the

 tive endings $-\boldsymbol{L}_{L}[-\mathrm{el}]$ and $-\boldsymbol{m}_{L}[-\mathrm{al}]$.

There are two infinitive endings and, correspondingly, two conjugation types in Armenian:

| 1. The first conjugation: | verb stem | $+L_{L}[-\mathrm{el}]$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2. The second conjugation: | verb stem | + | $-w_{L}[-\mathrm{al}]$ |

## Examples of the first-conjugation verbs:





## ExAMPLES OF THE SECOND-CONJUGATION VERBS:


 [hus-al] to hope, пппиーшц [vorot-al] to thunder, etc.

## II. The indicative mood

## 1. The present tense of regular verbs

In languages, the indicative is known as the most common mood, since most statements and questions are expressed in this mood. As opposed to English, which has two types of present tense, namely the present indefinite [ Igo ] and the present continuous [ I am going], Eastern Armenian has only one present tense equivalent to both English present tenses. The Armenian present tense is a complex formation which combines the auxiliary verb tif [em] I am (see p. 12) and the present participle, which is built from the infinitive stem of the verb and the ending -пиц $[-u m]$ (see p. 236):

| Infinitive | $\rightarrow$ | Present participle | $\rightarrow$ | Indicative present tense |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $4 r^{-6} L\left[\mathrm{~g}^{\text {® }} \mathrm{rel}\right]$ | $\rightarrow$ | 7 $\boldsymbol{r}^{-\Pi\llcorner ⿺ 𠃊}$［ $\mathrm{g}^{\text {rr－um］}}$ |  |  I write or I am writing |
|  | $\rightarrow$ |  |  |  I read or I am reading |

All regular verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（tur） | infinitive stem＋nLuf | ［－um em］ |
| 2nd pers．（qппL） | infinitive stem + пьuf $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{\iota}$ | ［－um es］ |
| 3rd pers．（\％шu） | infinitive stem $+\pi \underline{\sim} \boldsymbol{f}^{\mathbf{5}}$ | ［－um e］ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
|  |  | ［－um enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
|  | infinitive stem + n $\boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{p}}$ | ［－um ek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
|  | infinitive stem + nutf | ［－um en］ |

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Present tense（affirmative）



| （tu） |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| （7mL） | 4ппиル \％ |
| （\％шш） | 4！ппи |
| （fotsp） |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \times \boldsymbol{p})$ |  |
| （ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{\Gamma}}$ | 4 7ппи |




4шгワпиレ 5

4шгクாレル tap


Example：

［Jonə sovorum e hayeren． $\mathrm{Na} \operatorname{art}^{\text {b }}$ en $\operatorname{kart}^{\mathrm{b}}$ um e．］
John is learning Armenian．He is already reading．

[^2]
## Unit 1

## 2. The present tense of some irregular verbs

 ate from the regular pattern: they form their indicative present tense with a participle ending in - $\boldsymbol{\neq \boldsymbol { u }}$ [-is], rather than the regular present participle ending in -пицf [-um]. Here is the indicative present tense of $\boldsymbol{\iota ш} \boldsymbol{L}_{L}[\mathrm{tal}]$ to give, qш [gal] to come, and $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}[\mathrm{lal}]$ to cry:



(ะш) ипшцич 5




| quil [gal] to come | $\boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{L}$ [lal] to cry |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | [whtu tuf |
|  |  |
|  |  |
| q wifu Litup |  |
| quiliu ${ }_{\text {tep }}$ | [ whin tep |
|  | [ш! |

b) There are irregular and defective verbs (see pp. 334-336) that do not follow the conventional pattern of forming just one present tense. Some frequently used Armenian verbs have two parallel sets of present tense, one irregular pattern and one regular. For instance,


Lhintra* [linel] to be

| ( 1 u) | 6LS |
| :---: | :---: |
| (\%пL) | Lu |
| (¢ıи) | 5 |
| (LSLGP) | Hfep |
| $(q \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{L}$ ) | ${ }_{4} \boldsymbol{L}_{\underline{L}}$ |
|  | H5 |


mashimi [unenal] to have

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| nL¢tu |  |
| nLE/h | nLELETHLU 5 |
| nLitucp | пLELEMTLU HEP |
| mLEtap |  |
|  |  |

Note that each entry in the first set conjugates as a single word ( $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{L}$, etc.) while each

 (now) express a current state, the regular forms [ןínıuf tuf [linum em]) I (usually) am


|  | vs. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [Aystegh em] |  | [Aystegh linum em] |
| I am (now) here. |  | I am (usually) \%ere. |
|  | vs. |  |
| [Zhamanak unem] |  | [Zhamanak unenum em] |
| I (now) have time. |  | I (usually) have time. |

[^3]
## Unit 1

## 3. Uses of the present tense

In Armenian, the primary function of the indicative present tense is to express events, actions, and states that are in effect in the present. It can also indicate an action in progress at the time of speaking:

> [Inch ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ es anum? Namak em gərum]
> What are you doing? I am writing a letter.

This tense also expresses habitual actions:

## 

[Duk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ hayeren karth um ek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]
Do you read Armenian?
It is used to indicate recurrent events and universal truths:

[Yerkirə $\mathrm{p}^{2} \mathrm{t}^{2}$ tvum e arevi shurjə]
The earth rotates around the sun.
It can indicate an action in the future, implying that events have been arranged:

[Ays amar $g^{ə}$ num enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ Hayastan]
This summer we are going to Armenia.
In certain narratives, the indicative present expresses past events more dynamically:

[ $\mathrm{M}^{\top}$ tnum en $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ aghak ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ yev amen inch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ averum]
They enter the city and destroy everything.

## B. NOUNS

1. The definite article -г $[-ə] /-؟[-n]$

When referring to particular persons or things, English uses the definite article the, which precedes the common noun. Armenian expresses such determination by affixing the definite article $-\Sigma[-ə]$ or $-\varsigma[-n]$ to the noun. The selection of $-\Sigma$ or $-\Sigma$ depends on the phonetic environment of the noun in question. As a rule, the subject is affixed by the definite article.

[^4]-ц [-ə] appears after nouns ending in a consonant, and -؟ [-n] after nouns ending in a vowel:
\[

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { [shun] } \rightarrow \text { [shunə] } \\
& (\operatorname{dog}) \rightarrow\left(\text { dog }_{\text {the }}\right) \\
& \text { dog } \quad \rightarrow \text { the dog } \\
& \begin{array}{ll}
\text { [katu] } & \rightarrow \text { [katun] } \\
\text { (cat) } & \rightarrow \text { (cat the) } \\
\text { cat } & \rightarrow \text { the cat }
\end{array}
\end{aligned}
$$
\]

- $\uparrow$ [-n] may also be attached to a noun that ends in a consonant if it is followed by a word that begins with a vowel:


```
[shunn u katun]
(dog
the dog and the cat
```


## 

[Sa mer $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}}$ oghots $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}^{\mathrm{n}}$ ] $]$
(This our street ${ }_{\text {the }}$ is)
This is our street.

Unlike in English and other major European languages, proper nouns in East Armenian require definite articles. This applies to geographic names:

##  <br> [Chb inastanə mets yerkir e] <br> (China ${ }_{\text {the }}$ great country is) <br> China is a great country.


[Yerevanə mayrak ${ }^{\text {baghak }}{ }^{\text { }}$ e]
Yerevan $_{\text {the }}$ capital is) Yerevan is a capital.

Names of persons also appear with the definite article:

[Aramə nkarum e] [Anin karth um e] [Aramn u Levonə hay en] (Aram the painting is) (Ani ${ }_{\text {the }}$ reading is) (Aram the and Levon ${ }_{\text {the }}$ Armenians are) Aram is painting. Ani is reading. Aram and Levon are Armenians.

## 2. The indefinite article $s \neq$ [mi]

Unlike the definite article $-\Sigma[-\partial] /-\Sigma[-n]$, the Armenian indefinite article $\varsigma_{\mu}[$ [mi] is placed before the noun, and is not attached to it in writing:

|  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [mi tun] | [mi togha] | [mi vart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |
| (a house) | (a boy) | (a rose) |
| a house | a boy | a rose |

However, the indefinite article $\boldsymbol{\kappa} \boldsymbol{\rho}$ [mi] can be optional. In many cases it can be omitted altogether. This applies particularly to non-countable nouns:

|  |  | Lwel qtirt 5: |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [Sa (mi) varth e] | [Namak g ${ }^{\text {2 rets }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ i] | [Lav gini e] |
| (This [a] rose is) | (Letter I-wrote) | (Good wine is) |
| This is a rose. | I wrote a letter. | It is a good wine |

## Unit 1

## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Armenian equivalents of the English personal pronoun you

When addressing people, Armenian features two pronouns that correspond in usage to the
 you, which are comparable to $t u$ and vous in French. श.пь [du] is a singular form used to address close friends and relatives, as well as members of the same social group such as classmates, students, co-workers, etc. It is also the way in which an adult addresses a child.

## Examples:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Ani, (du) $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ ani tarekan es?] | [Mayrik, (du) galis es?] |
| Ani, how old are you? (informal) | Mother, are you coming? (informal) |

Like the French vous, the personal pronoun $\boldsymbol{\tau} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{\mathscr { P }}}$ [duk $\left.{ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}\right]$ has two applications:

1) it is the formal or polite way to address a stranger or a person of higher status;

2 ) it is the plural form of the personal pronoun used to address two or more people.

## Examples:


[Tikin, duk ${ }^{\natural}$ hay ek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]
[Yerekhaner, (duk ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ ) $\mathrm{g}^{\text {num }} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]
Madam, are you Armenian? (formal) Children, are you leaving? (plural)
 declined, conventional distinctions are maintained (see Unit 8, p. 186):
informal
чーロ [du] you
$\boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{n}}\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{o}\right]$ your
$\boldsymbol{p}^{\text {try }}$ [ $\left.\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ez}\right]$ (to) you



## Examples:


[ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ez lav haskanum em]
I understand you well. (informal)

## formal / plural

$\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square}\left\llcorner\boldsymbol{\perp}\right.$ [duk $\left.{ }^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ you
$\boldsymbol{a}_{\boldsymbol{L}}^{\boldsymbol{r}} \boldsymbol{r}$ [dzer] your
d $\iota_{Z}$ [dzez] (to) you



## 

 [Dzez lav chb em 10 sum]I don't hear you well. (formal/plural)

Note that the English you does not make case distinctions either, invariably applying you for the informal $p^{t_{q}}\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ez}\right]$ (to) you and the formal or plural $\boldsymbol{d}_{\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{q}}}$ [dzez] (to) you.

## Unit 1

## VII WORD FORMATION

## Derivations from country names

To form new words from names of countries，Armenian uses the following nominal and adjectival suffixes：

1．－（w） $\boldsymbol{y} \boldsymbol{H}\left[-(\mathrm{a}) \mathrm{ts}^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{i}\right]$ is used to form nouns indicating provenance or nationality：



2．Provenance and nationality are also expressed by reduced forms corresponding to the root of the country name：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { クロпьшшшாшธ [Rंusastan] Russia } \rightarrow \text { ппьи [rius] Russian }
\end{aligned}
$$

3 Less common is the suffix -14 ［－ik］added to the root of the proper noun designating the country：

4．$-\boldsymbol{\pi} \leqslant \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}$［－uhi］creates feminine counterparts from masculine nouns：

$\varsigma_{ш \jmath}[$ hay $]$ Armenian（male）$\rightarrow \varsigma_{ш \jmath п ь} \varsigma_{\mu}$［hayuhi］Armenian（female）

 added to the root of the country name：

| Lu［rus］Russian（person） | $\rightarrow$ ппıutritu［ruseren］Russian（language） |
| :---: | :---: |
| sw」［hay］Armenian（person） | $\rightarrow$ Sujtritic［hayeren］Armenian（language） |
| Smıju［huyn］Greek | $\rightarrow$ SmLiumbits［hunaren］Greek（language） |
|  |  |

6．－шцшц［－akan］is the most productive adjectival suffix．Adjectives are formed by adding this suffix to the root of the noun：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| กワпьшшшยпш์［Ṙusastan］Russia | $\rightarrow$ ппьшшцшц［rusakan］Russian（adjective） |

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## Armenian word accentuation

As a rule, Armenian stresses the final syllable of words. This implies that the stress is mobile and shifts to the final syllable when more complex forms of words are created from less complex ones:

```
<шш [háy] Armenian (person)
Gum有! [hayér] Armenians
Sujtpts[Hayerén] Armenian (language)
```




There are exceptions to this rule:

1. Since the vowel $-г[ə]$ is always unstressed, it is the syllable before the definite article $-\_[-\partial]$ where the stress is placed:

ऽшлд [háyo] the Armenian
Sшј䂙 [hayérə] the Armenians


2. Some two-syllable words do not necessarily consist of two vowels in writing. The last syllable contains an unwritten [ ${ }^{2}$ ] which is not pronounced:



```
~L!\etar [megh`r] honey, etc.
```

3. When words of any length ending in a consonant assume the possessive articles - $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ $[-\mathrm{s}]$ and ${ }_{-r}[-\mathrm{t}]$ (see p. 55), the final syllable containing the unwritten [ ${ }^{2}$ ] is not stressed:


4. Ordinal numbers and other words ending in -



5. Some common words do not stress the final syllable and must be memorized: $n / 1 / 5$





## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## Punctuation marks in Armenian

Punctuation marks in Armenian (see Unit 10, p. 241) differs somewhat from those in English. Here is some information on the most commonly used marks.
In its graphic representation, the Armenian comma [,] coincides with its English counterpart. Its usage, however, varies (see p. 241). In contrast, the Armenian period [:] graphically differs from the English full-stop [.] while its usage is very similar to English.

In Armenian, the most distinct punctuation mark, in both representation and usage, is the question mark [ ${ }^{\circ}$ ]. Rather than concluding the interrogative sentence with an [?], the Armenian [ ${ }^{[ }$] is always placed on the stressed syllable of the word emphasized in the interrogative sentence.

## Examples:

## 

[Kani lezu gitek ${ }^{\text {? }}$ ]
How many languages do you know?

## 

[Angleren khosum ek ${ }^{\text { }}$ ?]
Do you speak English?

[Duk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$ khosum angleren?]
Do you speak English?

[Angleren chb ${ }^{\text {ek }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ khosum?]
Do you not speak English?

[Angleren $\mathrm{e}^{\text {b }}$ khosum?]
Do you speak English?

[Chb inaren es sovorum, ch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}$ ?]
You study Chinese, don't you?

[Mith e chb inaren es sovorum]
How is it possible that you study Chinese?

## Unit 1

## X WRITING

 th, II, Huw, h, K̆m, thum, II, If Imu, h, Ihtum

$n$, nulle, ilnif, ni, a niul, $n$, nneu d, diuil, ned, o M, Milk, linul, Ml, a Miul, Mr, leneu d, dimul, Mlat, 0

 [vo] [vomn] [mom] [u] [us] [ir] [ius] [zh] [zham] [uzh] [o]

## XI EXERCISES

1．Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column．
a． $\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{u}$


d．7．7L
e．ULSter
f．\＆ш
g．クロー・

4шாクாடи เル์：






2．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in a，b，c，and d．Replace mintlarlisu










3．Complete the sentences．







4．Complete the sentences．







5. Fill in the corresponding words.







6. Fill in the corresponding words.








7. Use the appropriate forms of the verbs.







8. Translate the following questions, using the appropriate forms to address people.
a. What is your name, Sir?
b. How old are you, Ani?

## Unit 1

c. How many languages do you speak, Miss?
d. What is your address, Armen?
e. What is your telephone number, Mr. Smith?
f. What do you study, Anna?
g. What are you doing here, children?
9. Answer the following questions.






10. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.







## XII PROVERBS


[ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ani lezu gites, aynk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ an mart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{s}}$ ]
You are as many (people) as the languages you know.

[Ashkharhi shinogharth andogho lezurre]
The world's builder or destroyer is the tongue.

[Yerkar lezun karchats ${ }^{\text {² }}$ num-e kyank ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ ə]
A long tongue shortens life.

## Unit 2



## On the agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: 1. Identifying things and persons ..... 24
2. Affirming and denying states and actions ..... 25
Vocabulary: 1. Rooms and furniture ..... 28
2. Classroom items ..... 29
Grammar: Verbs: Formation of the negative forms of verbs

1. Irregular verbs ..... 30
2. Regular verbs ..... 30
Nouns: Formation of the plural ..... 32
Armenian-English Contrasts: Word order in Armenian sentences (inversion) ..... 34
Word Formation: Formation of compound nouns ..... 36
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{\beta} \boldsymbol{f}, \boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\mu}$, and $\boldsymbol{\phi} \boldsymbol{\phi}$ ..... 37
Orthography: Exclamation marks in Armenian ..... 38
Writing:  ..... 39

## I DIALOGUES

Two friends, $A$ and $B$, meet in the university hallway.
A. Rшrı', Utгrt:
Hello, Mary!
[Barev, Meri]

[Barev, Lilit ${ }^{\text {b }}$. Aystegh inch es anum?]

[ashkhatum es?]

[Voch, hayeren em sovorum]

[Ah, gitem, du shat]

Armenian friends.
[hay ənkerner unes]

[Ayo, yev hayerenə shat em sirum]
 [Bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ du hayeren gites, chb ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ?]
 [Haskanum em, mi kidich el khosum em,] a little,

[bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ grel yev kartal ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ gitem]

[Haykakan aybubenə d²zhvar e?]


[Isk hayeren $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ erakanut ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ yunə?]

[Shat lav dasagirk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ unenk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]

[Dranov amen inchi khagh u par e]

[Bolor tarerə karogh es gərel?]

[Voch' ${ }^{\text {, }}$, bolorə der ch ${ }^{\text {² }}$ əitem]
 [Amen or hayereni das unek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]

[Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$, shap $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ә yerku ank ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ am]

[Uzum es $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ez}^{\mathrm{L}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ənnem?]


B. $U_{u}$ ficu 5 :
[Sa inche?]
A. リи пшиш!шк์ 5:
[Sa dasaran e]
В. शшшшгшкиг цпппр 5:
[Dasaranə $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \underbrace{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{e}^{\text {en }}$ ?

[Vochb, $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \underbrace{\mathrm{rr} \mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}}$. Mets e]

[Aystegh inchb es tesnum?]
 [Mi seghan, gəraseghanner yev at ${ }^{\text {th }}$ oiner]

[Inchb ka seghani $v^{\text {r }}$ ra ?]

[ $\mathrm{G}^{\text {rk }}{ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ er u tetrer]

[Urish inchíh ka?]

[Matitner, gərichb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ner yev mi retin]

[Aystegh ove nstum?]


No, I don't know them all yet.

Do you have Armenian classes every day?

No, twice a week.

Do you want me to examine you?

Why not? Let's start!

What's this?

This is a classroom.

Is the classroom small?

No, it's not small. It's big.

What do you see here?

A table, desks, and chairs.

What's on the table?

Books and notebooks.

What else is there?

Pencils, two pens, and an eraser.

Who sits here?

The teacher does.

[Isk ayntegh?]

[Ayntegh usanoghnern en n${ }^{\text {²stum }}$

[Patin inch ${ }^{\text {k }}$ ka?]

[Gəratakhtak u n² ${ }^{2}$ arner]
B. $n_{2 \mu}{ }^{\circ} z^{\circ}$
[Urishh?]

[Mi zhamatss ${ }^{\text {bints }}{ }^{\text {bid }}$ ]
 [Apres, lav ashakertuhi es]

And over there?

The students sit there.

What's on the wall?

A blackboard and pictures.

What else?

A clock.

Good for you! You are a good pupil (female).

## II TEXT

> L.U.4. TU.SUUIbU.G
> [Lav pataskhan]
 [Ays khumbə hayeren e sovorum. Ashakertnerə art ${ }^{\text {th }}$ en mi kich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ khosumen, gərum



-Yete ays kavichə kisem, $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ani $\mathrm{k}^{\text {ətor }}$ kavich kunenam?

Mi ashakert pataskhanume e: -Yerku kətor. Usuts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ch}^{\text {b }}$ uhin norits $\underbrace{\text { e }}$ harts $^{\text {² }}$ num:


- Yet $^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{e}$ norits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ kisem amen mi kitorə? -Ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ors ${ }^{\text {²tor, }}$-asume ashakerto.

-Isk yete norits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kisem, inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kunenank ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?

-Kavich chh ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {m}}{ }^{2}$ na; $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}}$ oshhi $\mathrm{k}^{\text {d daina, }}$ - pataskhanum e ashakertə.]


## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

| ［ ${ }^{\text {Wel }}$ | ［lav］ | good |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| чџшпши／уши | ［pataskhan］ | answer |
| шјш | ［ays］ | this |
| ¢นпレน） | ［khumb］ | group |
|  | ［sovorel］ | to learn |
|  | ［ashakert］ | pupil（male） |
|  | ［ashakertuhi］ | pupil（female） |
| шrワtur | ［ $\mathrm{art}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{en}$ ］ | already |
| str eht | ［mi k ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ich}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ］ | a little |
| шлшор | ［aysor］ | today |
| 51 | ［el］ | too，also |
| Suzthe | ［hashvel］ | to count |
|  | ［usuts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uhi］ | teacher（female） |
|  | ［harts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nel］ | to ask |
| t／みt | ［yet ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ］ | if |
| 4шリ｜f6 | ［kavich］ | chalk |
| 41 utis | ［kisel］ | to cut in half |
|  | ［yet ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e kisem］ | if I cut it in half |
| $\mathrm{p}^{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ani］ | how many？ |
| 4шпп | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {tor }}$ ］ | piece |
| пL¢\％¢um | ［unenal］ | to have |
|  | ［pataskhanel］ | to answer |
| Surrig | ［norits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | again |
| шน上¢ | ［amen］ | every，each |
| шut！ | ［asel］ | to say |
| 104 | ［isk］ | and，but |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ oshi］ | dust |
|  | ［mnal］ | to remain，stay |
| 2¢\％ | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i mna］ | won＇t remain |
|  | ［dainal］ | to become，to turn |
| 47шпโை | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {darna }}$ ］ | will become，will turn into |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

|  |  | ROOMS AND FURNITURE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［bazkat ${ }^{\text {or }}$ or ${ }^{\text {］}}$ | armchair |
| щшьп24ш⿺𠃊 | ［patshgamb］ | balcony |
| ІпףшГши | ［logharan］ | bathroom |
|  | ［mahchakal］ | bed（piece of furniture） |
|  | ［ankoghin］ | bed（mattress＋bedding） |
|  | ［n｀njasenyak］ | bedroom |
| 4пアワ | ［gorg］ | carpet |
| шпшยยпшワ | ［arastagh］ | ceiling |
| ш／みпп | ［at ${ }^{\text {or }}$ or］ | chair |
|  | ［zhamats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | clock |
|  | ［mijants ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | corridor，hallway |
| Fwqurng | ［bazmots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | couch |
|  | ［ $\operatorname{varak}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{uyr}$ ］ | curtain |
|  | ［chashasenyak］ | dining room |
| \％ 7 \％ | ［dur］ | door |
|  | ［mutk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | entrance |
| ¢шшшบ | ［hatak］ | floor |
| นппน์ | ［tun］ | house，home |
| ［un¢wimg | ［khohanots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | kitchen |
|  | ［lusamp ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{op}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | lampshade |
|  | ［hyurasenyak］ | living room |
|  | ［hayeli］ | mirror |
|  | ［dashnamur］ | piano |
| пшそ！ | ［radio］ | radio |
|  | ［ashkhatasenyak］ | study room |
|  | ［seghan］ | table |
| Stırwйпи | ［herakhos］ | telephone |
|  | ［herustats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | television set |
|  | ［zuk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aran］ | toilet |
|  | ［tsaghkaman］ | vase |
| щшшппน | ［patuhan］ | window |


| ๆ.u.uu.rus | [Dasaran] | CLASSROOM |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢шшгши | [1saran] | auditorium |
| щшјпьшши | [payusak] | bag |
| โшипшгшะ | [ ${ }^{\text {® }}$ Staran] | bench |
| 4hre | [girk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | book |
|  | [gəradaran] | bookcase, library |
|  | [gərapaharan] | bookcase |
| чгшппииппи | [gəratakhtak] | blackboard |
| Suzilts | [hashvich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | calculator |
|  | [kavich] | chalk |
|  | [hamakark ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {cheb }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | computer |
| 4กшићпш์ | [ ${ }^{\text {® }}$ raseghan] | desk |
| ршпшшгй | [bararan] | dictionary |
| nturfis | [ietin] | eraser |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {nnut }}$ t yun ] | exam |
|  | [tt ${ }^{\text {2ght }}{ }^{\text {d }}$ apanak] | file |
|  | [dasakhosuth yun] | lecture |
| ๆши | [das] | lesson |
| $\mathrm{p}^{\text {w/urntry }}$ | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ artez] | map |
|  | [ n ²ar] | picture |
| уппуш¢иш」ип | [tss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ utsap ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ayt] | pointer |
| unturn | [tetr ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ] | notebook |
|  | [gərasenyak] | office |
| 58 | [ej] | page |
|  | [ $\mathrm{t}^{\text {b }}$ ught ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | paper |
| 4rter | [gərich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | pen |
| ィтшйип | [matit] | pencil |
|  | [ $\mathrm{g}^{\text {rcchen }}{ }^{\text {a }}$ atup ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | pen tray |
|  | [bemaharth ak] | podium |
|  | [ambion] | pulpit |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{t}}$ anon] | ruler |
| чшшшฯ | [dasagirk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | textbook |

## V GRAMMAR

## A．VERBS

## 1．Formation of the negative forms of verbs

To create negative counterparts of affirmative forms，Armenian uses the negative particle $\varepsilon^{-}$［ch ${ }^{-1}$ ］by prefixing it to the verb．This is，for instance，how the negative forms of the infinitive are formed：





［linel the chl ${ }^{\text {b }}$ linel？
To be or not to be？
The negative counterparts of some common irregular verbs are similarly constructed：

| Luf［em］I am | $\rightarrow$ ELif［ch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{em}$ ］I am not |
| :---: | :---: |
| пLELu5［unem］I have |  |
| qhentus［gitem］I know |  |

Compare the full paradigm：

| （ヶヵ） | Luf | $\rightarrow$ | \＆ | nLELuf | $\rightarrow$ |  | 4tuntuf | $\rightarrow$ | 24huntuf |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （\％ロレ） | Lu | $\rightarrow$ | ¢ | nLitur | $\rightarrow$ |  | 4 ¢ヶmbu | $\rightarrow$ | 24ヶuntu |
| （\％uw） | 5 | $\rightarrow$ | と $1 / 25^{*}$ | nLSum | $\rightarrow$ | 2пLโ\％ | 4hent | $\rightarrow$ | 24tunt |
| （ıLtsp） | trip | $\rightarrow$ | 2tip | nLSticter | $\rightarrow$ | qnLiticp | 4timbicte | $\rightarrow$ | 24huntixp |
|  | ${ }_{4}{ }_{4}$ | $\rightarrow$ | 2te | nLEtep | $\rightarrow$ | \｛ $\quad$ Lut．p | 4 tiontep | $\rightarrow$ | 24huntup |
|  | 45 | $\rightarrow$ | ctur | HLELTu | $\rightarrow$ | ¢ $\quad$ L¢L¢ | 4 fintis | $\rightarrow$ | 24hutio |

## 2．The negative paradigm of present tense indicative（regular verbs）

Regular verbs form the negative paradigm of the present tense indicative by combining the negated auxiliary $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{L} \mu \boldsymbol{L}}\left[\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{em}\right]$（see above）with the present participle ending in－rıuf：


Note here the difference in word order：rather than following the present participle $\boldsymbol{\text { п }}$ ппиレ ［gərum］，the negated auxiliary $\left\{\mathcal{L}^{\circ} \mathcal{S}\right.$［ch ${ }^{b} \mathrm{em}$ ］precedes it．

[^5]All regular verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1．pers．（tu） |  | ＋verb stem＋пьı | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{em}+$ verb stem +um$]$ |
| 2．pers．（qпıL） |  | ＋verb stem＋пLuf | ［chbes＋verb stem＋um］ |
| 3．pers．（\％um） | $\sum h^{*}$ | ＋verb stem + nıL | $\left[\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{i}\right.$＋verb stem +um$]$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |  |
|  | \％tict | ＋verb stem＋пıи | ［ $\mathrm{ch}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{enk}^{\mathrm{b}}+$ verb stem +um$]$ |
| 2．pers．（ $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square}<\boldsymbol{L}$ ） | $\varepsilon^{4} \boldsymbol{P}$ | ＋verb stem + пиц | ［chblek ${ }^{\text {b }}$＋verb stem $+u m$ ］ |
| 3．pers．（ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$ |  | ＋verb stem + nıuf | ［chblen + verb stem $+u m$ ］ |

## Present tense indicative（negative）

| $4]^{1 / 2}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| ［gəre | write |
| と 45 | 4Гпレน์ |
| そヶu | 4 ［ппиை |
| とh | 4 пппи $^{\text {¢ }}$ |
| \％ticp | 4 ［ппиц |
| $z^{t} \boldsymbol{p}$ |  |
| ztict | 4！пレนf |

## 

［khosel］to speak


［karth al］to read





そち氏 ムшாワாレル

The three monosyllabic verbs， $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$［gal］to come， $\boldsymbol{m}_{\boldsymbol{\prime}}$［tal］to give，and $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$［lal］to cry





|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| ［gal］to come |  |
| とtuf |  |
| 2tu | тш位 |
| とh | тш位 |
| \％ 5 Tu | тш位 |
| tter | qwitu |
| 2tur | 4ш位 |

> нишц
> [tal] to give

| 2tus | нпшцй |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2ヶu | шпшцй |
| と | ппшц！ |
| $\sum_{\text {ctup }}$ | шпш僸 |
| 2ter | шшцй |
| Ets | тпш位 |

${ }^{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}$
［lal］to cry

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { を会 } \quad \text { Lш! }
\end{aligned}
$$

[^6]A common East Armenian complex construction that correponds to the English I can is 4шாпп $\leftarrow \AA$［karogh em］（literally：I am able）．Here is its conjugation paradigm：

| （tur） | 4шןாп tur I can |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （7пL） | 4ш［пп\％tu you can |  |
| （\％ıu） | 4ш⿺𠃊п\％ 5 he／she／it can | $\rightarrow$ \＆h 4ш！пп\％helshelit cannot |
|  | 4шипп ti．p we can |  |
| （\％пレ¢） |  |  |
|  | 4ш［пп\％Lis they can | $\rightarrow$ ¢E¢ 4ш［חп\％they cannot |

 meaning：to be usually／normally／in general able．



## B．NOUNS

## Formation of the plural forms

Most Armenian countable nouns form the plural by adding one of the two plural suffixes to
 than one syllable：

| ［пレ」и［luys］light |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4пיף［gorg］carpet |  |
| ヶшшก¢ип［matit］pencil |  |
| щшшппьヶш์［patuhan］window |  |

Only a certain group of monosyllabic nouns form the plural with－




The suffix－ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{r}}$ is also added to nouns that have only one written vowel，but are pro－ nounced as having more than one syllable because of the transitory［ ${ }^{2}$ ］before or between consonants（see Unit 6，p．137）：

47たши［ ${ }^{2}$ zgest］dress



шшип［ast²gh］star

$$
\rightarrow 4 \psi^{2} \not \Gamma^{5} \Gamma \text { [vagrer] tigers** }
$$

$$
\rightarrow \text { шшипп片 [astgher] stars** }
$$

[^7]Compound nouns take the ending $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{t}}^{\boldsymbol{r}}$, if their second component is a monosyllabic noun:

However, if the second component is a verbal derivation that is not used as an independent noun, the compound noun takes the plural ending - $\boldsymbol{H}_{\boldsymbol{L}}^{\boldsymbol{r}} \boldsymbol{L}_{r}$ :
шпшципи [s²takhos] liar

шчұшиเг [azgaser] patriot




Some nouns may have additional plural forms. Nouns ending in $-\boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{f}$, $-\boldsymbol{m g h}$, and $-\kappa g \neq$ take also the archaic plural suffix - $\mathbf{p}$ :
 Yerevan


Other irregular plural formations include:

| $4 \mathrm{flis}_{\text {[kin] woman }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| uhlıfis [tikin] madam, Mrs. |  |
| щшцппиц [paron] Sir, gentleman |  |
| swlerl $^{\text {[ }}$ [mart ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ] human being, men |  |
|  |  |

Note that after numerals, nouns are generally used in the singular:

 $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ani] a few, nouns are often used in the singular:


 ous, the plural form of the noun is used:


Fшq\&im/




## VI ARMENIAN－ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Word order in Armenian sentences（inversion）

The normal word order of an English simple clause is SVO（Subject－Verb－Object）：Maria wrote a letter．In Armenian，although word order is relatively free，a SOV（Subject－Object －Verb）order predominates．Thus，in a simple Armenian clause，be it a statement，question， or command，the conjugated verb tends to occupy the final position：

（クロレ）そ！
［（Yes）zhamanak unem］
［（Du）dram chb unes？］
（I time have）
I have time．
（You money not－have？）
Don＇t you have money？

When the auxiliary $\iota_{\iota} \mathcal{f}$［em］I am fulfills the function of a copula，i．e．a verb that joins a subject to its complement，it generally assumes the typical final position：


```
[Aramə hay e] [Jonə hay chb}\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{B}}\mathrm{ e]
(Aram Armenian is) (John Armenian not-is)
Aram is an Armenian．John is not an Armenian．
```

However，when the auxiliary $\boldsymbol{t \kappa \delta}$［em］I am is part of a compound tense（auxiliary verb ＋participle），the auxiliary enforces its own rules．It then positions itself in a sentence depending on the sentence type．

1．In an affirmative sentence，where the action itself is emphasized，the regular SOV word order（participle＋auxiliary verb $\leftarrow \stackrel{\sim}{ }$［em］$I \mathrm{am}$ ）with the auxiliary in final position pre－ vails（see pp．11－12）．However，as was seen on p．30，in the negative counterpart of the same sentence the word order is inverted：the auxiliary precedes the participle．＊

［（Menk ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ）khosum enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］
（We talking are）
We are talking．

［（Duk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ）ch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}{ }^{2}$ sum］
（You not－are listening）
You are not listening．${ }^{* *}$

2．In special questions initiated by an interrogative pronoun，typically an inversion occurs whereby the normal word order is changed．For East Armenian this means：

[^8]a) placing the emphasized word, i.e. the interrogative pronoun, in initial position;
b) placing the respective response to the question in initial position;
c) placing the auxiliary verb, with or without negation, immediately after the emphasized word.

|  | $\rightarrow$ SmLis Luf qumbuf: |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Ur es gənum?] | [Tun em gənum] |
| Where are you going? | I am going home . |
|  |  |
| [Ov chib i harts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ 2num?] | [Annan chib ${ }^{\text {i }}$ harts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ 2num] |

As illustrated, the inverted word order applies to special questions, both affirmative and negative, and their respective responses. Here, the word order between Armenian and English is obvious.
3. Thus, inversion serves to mark priorities that can be tested by a simple question:

[Yes em gərum]
$I$ am writing.

[(Yes) namak em gərum]
I am writing a letter.

[(Yes) $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{ez}$ em gərum]
I am writing to you.

[Ov e gərum?]
Who is writing?
(Question) グ\&
[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ es g ${ }^{\text {rum? }}$ ]
What are you writing?

[Um es gərum?]
To whom are you writing?
4. Unstressed complements of the verb appear between the auxiliary and the participle:

[Na e namak gərum]
He is writing a letter.

[ $\mathrm{Na} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ez}$ e namak gərum]
He is writing a letter to you.

[Na aysor e namak gərum]
He is writing a letter today.

[Ov e namak gərum?]
Who is writing a letter?
(Question) $\boldsymbol{\Pi}^{\circ}$ ци 5 \&ши
[Um e na namak gərum?] To whom is he writing a letter?

[Yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e na namak gərum?]
When is he writing a letter?

## VII WORD FORMATION

## Formation of compound nouns

Armenian compound nouns typically consist of two basic elements that are joined to each other either directly or by the connecting vowel -ш-.

The following compound nouns are joined directly, without a connecting vowel:

| 4бноп [kesor] midday, noon | $\leftarrow$ ( $4\llcorner\boldsymbol{\text { L }}$ + о $\boldsymbol{\square}$ half + day $)$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $\leftarrow$ (дпиц + шцц sea + shore $)$ |

More commonly, however, the two components are joined by the connecting vowel -ш-:

|  | $\begin{aligned} \leftarrow & \left(\varsigma_{\jmath} \Pi\left\llcorner\Gamma+ш+\boldsymbol{\mu}+\kappa_{\jmath} \omega ц\right)\right. \\ & (\text { guest }+ \text { conn } .+ \text { room }) \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |

The components can originate from various parts of speech:



d) adjective + noun: $\_$ן

When the first element ends in $\boldsymbol{-} \boldsymbol{r}$, this vowel contracts with the connecting $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ to an $\boldsymbol{t}$ :

Elements of compound nouns may also be joined by the particles $-\boldsymbol{m}-[\mathrm{u}]$ and $-\boldsymbol{L}-[y e v]$ and:

In Armenian word formation it is common for some vowels to alternate. For instance, $\boldsymbol{p}$


4lisu [gin] price
นாเип [sut] lie
цпレји [luys] light
ヶீшยпш์์ [matyan] book

$\rightarrow$ шшшшןипи [ $\mathrm{s}^{\text {takhos] }}$ liar



[^9]
## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## 

The consonant system of Eastern Armenian differs from that of other Indo-European languages (see p. xx). Rather than a dual system of stop consonants, such as the voiced $\boldsymbol{b}$ and the voiceles $\boldsymbol{p}$, East Armenian has a triple system with one voiced $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{r}}[\mathrm{b}]$ and two voiceless stops, the non-aspirated $\mu_{\mu}[\mathrm{p}]$ and the aspirated $\mu_{\mu}\left[\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$. The non-aspirated $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\mu}[\mathrm{p}]$ may seem unusual to the English-speaking student in that it is pronounced with stronger plosion, occupying an intermediate position between the $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{R}}$ [b] and the $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\boldsymbol{p}}\left[\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$. The triple system of the related stop consonants $\underset{\boldsymbol{F}}{\boldsymbol{\mu}} \boldsymbol{\mu}$, and $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ can be presented in the following table:

| voiced | $\boldsymbol{f}^{R}$ | [b] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| voiceless non-aspirated | ग川 | [p] |
| voiceless aspirated | ¢ 4 | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ ] |

Each of these stops represents an independent phoneme, i.e. the smallest phonetic unit in a language that distinguishes one word from another. The following three words differ in meaning in the contrast of the phonemic consonants $\underset{\sim}{\boldsymbol{R}}, \boldsymbol{\mu}$, and $\mu$ :

East Armenian is, on the whole, a phonetic language in that words are pronounced as writ-





 [hamp ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ erel] to be patient, etc. Also, after the consonant $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{Z}}$ the voiced $\boldsymbol{F}_{\boldsymbol{F}}$ [b] is pronounced
 tion, шŋғ [akhp] trash, etc. These phonetic deviations apply also to derivations of the




## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## Exclamation marks in Armenian

There are two exclamation marks in Armenian, the stress or acute mark (') and the extension mark ('). On the whole, they correspond to the English exclamation mark (!). Like the question mark ( ${ }^{\circledR}$ ) (see p. 18), they are superscripts. Both signs are placed on the stressed syllable of the emphasized word. The stress or acute mark (') is placed:

1. Over words stressed in an imperative sentence:

| 9.pr.eu unriLr: | Vfi'q qıu: |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Girk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ s tur!] | [Mi gəna!] |
| Give me my book! | Don't go! |

2. Over names of persons or words addressed to people:
 [Aram, yes aystegh em] [Paron, ays teghə azat e?]
Aram, I am here! Sir, is this seat free?
3. Over one-word replies used as strong assertions:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { [T } \mathrm{ert}^{\mathrm{h}}{ }^{\text {a }} \text { berel es? Ayo! or: Vochh }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { ! or: Iharke!] } \\
& \text { Did you bring my newspaper? Yes! or: No! or: Of course! }
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Over more prominent words singled out in a sentence:

[Im matitə chbem tesnum] or: [Im matitə chb ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ em tesnum]
I don't see my pencil. or: I don't see my pencil!
The extension mark (') appears in passionate speech where stressed vowels are prolonged to express emotion. It is placed:
5. Over greetings, welcoming expressions, congratulations, wishes, etc.:

[Voghjuyn! or Shb ${ }^{\text {ə }}$ norhavor! Barov yekar!]
Greetings! or: Congratulations! or: Welcome!
6. Over interrogative pronouns that initiate sentences expressing feelings such as admiration, regret, astonishment, etc.:

[Inch ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e! or: Ov er spasum! or: Vortegh 'en ayn orera!]
What a person! or: Who would expect it! or: Where are those days!
7. Over the majority of interjections:
[^10]
## X WRITING

p, pimik, q, quin, q, pnen, h, ku, $y$, ynh fi, fimk, $q_{2}$, Qimen, $_{n} \eta_{2}$, Minen, li, liu, 2, 2nh

h, tih, h, fill, p, pti, l, jul, p, plepptal hr tih, h hif, to, かti, hi Limer Ri, plepptal


## XI EXERCISES

1．Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column．






g．Иш ןш！щшишшцишк

```
q/untsip:
5 uп\ппппLf:
```



```
4/\mp@code{untu:}
5:
4ш шјшип畆:
kaf utrmuf:
```

2．Combine words from each of the three columns to create a complete sentence．

b． $7 . \pi<$ ．


e．7．nレ
f． $\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{u}$
g．$\varepsilon_{\text {／wiw }}$
wiryltitisu





¢mLiumptis
 ど 4 пாடル゚：

 ₹ 24funtu：


3．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in $a, b, c, d$ ，and $e$ ．Replace the verb











4．Answer the questions using the appropriate plural forms．







5. Answer the questions with a negative response following the pattern.








6. Complete the sentences.












e. Vtsep $\boldsymbol{\sim}$

8. Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of the phrasal verb 4.







9．Form sentences using the verb $n\left\llcorner q t_{L}\right.$ ．

b．クロー
c．U／ロ！



g． $\boldsymbol{b}$ и／२шип／шг





d．U．




11．Answer the questions in a correct word order：








12．Translate the following sentences．
a．The room has three windows．
b．Can you write all the letters？
c．How many pictures do you have？
d．I know a few words．
e. You have many books.
f. All students learn Armenian.
g. I have all the notebooks.
13. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.







## XII PROVERBS

 [Ov kart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ a, na mart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ a]
He who studies is a person.

[Gitut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yunə harəstut ${ }^{\text {t }}$ yun e]
Knowledge is wealth.

[Usum stats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ atso sovats chbl ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ i mna]
The educated won't remain hungry.

[Kart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ alo voski aparanjan e]
Education is a golden bracelet.

## Unit 3



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Making requests and responding to them ..... 46
Vocabulary: Food ..... 50
Grammar: Verbs: 1. Armenian equivalents of the English to be ..... 52
2. The indicative imperfect tense ..... 52
Possession: 1. Possessive adjectives ..... 54
2. Possessive articles ..... 55
3. Possessive pronouns ..... 56
Armenian-English Contrasts: Gender in Armenian ..... 57
Word Formation: 1. Derivation of abstract nouns ..... 58
2. Derivations of nouns denoting locations ..... 59
Pronunciation: The letters 9 q, 4 , and $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{p}$ ..... 60
Orthography: $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{t}$ or 55 ? ..... 61
Writing:  .....  62

## I DIALOGUES

1. In class: A and B are classmates. They address each other informally.

[Mi ban em khnt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ relu:

[Karmir matit unes?]

[Unem, aha]

[Bayts ${ }^{4}$ veradartss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ru khənt $^{\text {brem }}$ ]
 [Iharke, mi ropeyove indz petk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
2. In the office: $A$ and $B$ are colleagues. $A$ addresses $B$ formally

[Paron Palyan, sa dzer hashvich'ne?]

[Ayo, inche $\underbrace{\text { u }} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{b}}$ harts $\mathrm{s}^{\text {b }}$ num?]

[Mi ropeyov indz kətak ${ }^{\text {² }}$ ?]

[Anshusht, hamets ${ }^{\frac{5}{b}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$ !]
3. In the students' residence: $A$ and $B$ live together. $A$ has just returned from shopping.

[Oh, shat tsarav em]
Oh, I'm very thirsty!

[Minas, indz mi bazhak]

 [Sirov. Sarə jur es uzum?]


[Saruyts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ov?]


[Sh² ${ }^{2}$ orhakal em]
B. $9_{m}$



[Karogh es krahel the inch $\underbrace{\text { b }}$ e:



B. Пшரщшпш4 5:
[Paghpaghak e! ]
4. At the dinner table: Siblings $A$ and $B$ are having lunch together.

[Bari akhorzhak!]
B. $P_{L_{4}^{\prime}}^{\prime 2} 5:$
[ $\left.\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ezel}^{\mathrm{ze}}\right]$

[Armen, aghə ${ }^{\partial} p^{\text {b }}$ okhants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ es?]

[Khnthrem, hatst es uzum?]

[Ayo, yet ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e karelie e, lavash]
 [Shənorhakal em. Inchh hamov chashe!]

[Chasherə misht hamoven]

[yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mayrikn e patrastum]


A Ubrill hutrontur:
[Sirov, khənt ${ }^{\text {them }}$ ]
B. hulf ficte tiep furnuif:
[Isk inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ enk $^{\text {b }}$ kh${ }^{2}$ mum?]

[Gini kam urish kh ${ }^{2}$ mich $^{4}{ }^{4} k^{6}$ unenk ${ }^{1}$ ?]

[Gini chb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ unenk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aha saiəə]
 [Kotayk ${ }^{b}$, mer haykakan garejurə]

B 4LT\&u'g
[Kenats ${ }^{\text {brt }}$ !]

Certainly, here you are!

And what shall we drink?

Do we have some wine or any other drink?

We don't have wine, but here is some cold
"Kotayk," our Armenian beer.

Cheers!

## II TEXT

## PRUNUS ARMENIACA

 [Amen tari Amerikayits shat zbosashrjikner en galis Hayastan. Ays amar el


 Amen or nərank nor vayrer en ayts ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {e }}$ elum. Aysor Karinen nəran tanum e Yerevani
 kentronakan shhua. Inchi hianali shenk $\underbrace{\mathrm{b}}$ e Yerevani kentronakan shukan,





inchbisi guyner, inche aratut yun, inch pisi geghets ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {bid }}$ yun!
 Gitek ${ }^{\natural}$ vor Hayastanə tsirani hayrenik $\underbrace{\text { n e }}$ ? prunus armeniaca e nəra latineren
 anunə, asum e Karinen, aysink ${ }^{\text {² }} \mathrm{n}$, haykakan salor. Hima haskanum em,



## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS



## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

| пトSblıf | ［Utelik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | FOOD |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［lavash］ | Armenian flatbread |
| чшみш | ［gat ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ］ | Armenian sweet bread |
|  | ［khmoreghen］ | baked goods |
| ¢иппп！这 | ［khorovats］ | barbecue |
| ¢w， | ［hats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | bread |
| 4шГш\％ | ［karak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | butter |
|  | ［karkandak］ | cake，pastry |
| цшкй！ | ［panir］ | cheese |
| Suly | ［hav］ | chicken |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{kh}^{\text {dinvatsk }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | cookies，baked goods |
| 4шДโルニпп | ［kat ${ }^{\text {l }}$ nashor］ | cottage cheese，cream cheese |
| шцпццип | ［apukht］ | cured meat |
| ḋпL | ［dzu］ | egg |
| dmL4 | ［dzuk］ | fish |
| щшரщшワш丩 | ［paghpaghak］ | ice－cream |
| यпเर44 | ［sunk］ | mushroom |
| ヶ¢и | ［mis］ | meat |
| のり山よだ | ［dzºvatsegh］ | omelette |
|  | ［dzit ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aptugh］ | olive |
| Frisia | ［brindz］ | rice |
| 2шеши | ［shak ${ }^{\text {bar］}}$ | sugar |
|  | ［aghts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an，salat ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | salad |
| $4{ }^{5}$ | ［yershik］ | sausage |
| шщாレワ | ［apur］ | soup |
| แпนนึน | ［tolma］ | stuffed vine（cabbage）leaves |
| นึшனாடโ | ［matsun］ | yogurt |
| ¢Uすblh¢ | ［2mpelik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | BEVERAGES |
| qwrerentr | ［garejur］ | beer |
| บாL！${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［surch］ | coffee |
|  | ［mrk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ahyut ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ］ | fruit juice |
| 4шね | ［kat ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | milk |
| ¢น⿺𠃊 | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{an}$ ］ | tan（Arm．yogurt beverage） |
| ［6t」 | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\text {e }} \mathrm{ey}$ ］ | tea |
|  | ［（hank ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ayin） jur ］ | （mineral）water |
| 4tirth | ［gini］ | wine |
| ont | ［oghi］ | vodka |


| U「9．bづbu | ［ $\mathrm{M}^{\text {r }} \mathrm{rk}^{\mathbf{h}}$ eghen］ | FRUITS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［khndzor］ | apple |
| ว¢гшия | ［tsiran］ | apricot |
| пшโития | ［banan］ | banana |
| F\＃L | ［bal］ | cherry（sour） |
| 4tпши | ［keras］ | cherry（sweet） |
| ш［иヶш近 | ［armav］ | date |
| ¢шшグ！ | ［khaghogh］ | grape（s） |
|  | ［limon／kitron］ | lemon |
| 山th | ［sekh］ | melon |
|  | ［narinj］ | orange |
|  | ［deghtst ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | peach |
| นпшโ์ ${ }_{\text {¢ }}$ | ［tandz］ | pear |
| шய！ワワ | ［salor］ | plum |
| ¢umbr | ［nur］ | pomegranate |
| utrutrit | ［serkevil］ | quince |
| 5 | ［yelak］ | strawberry |
| dsterm＜4 | ［dzºmeruk］ | watermelon |
| RUYSUPbつtu | ［Banjareghen］ | VEGETABLES |
| nbくw | ［rehan］ | basil |
| アшザロ4 | ［bazuk］ | beet，beet root |
|  | ［kaghamb］ | cabbage |
|  | ［gazar，stepghin］ | carrot |
|  | ［tsaghkakaghamb］ | cauliflower |
| Sumftif | ［hamem］ | coreander，cilantro |
|  | ［varung］ | cucumber |
| шш上ீ¢¢ | ［samit ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | dill |
|  | ［s²mbuk，badrijan］ | eggplant |
| и＂ | ［s ${ }^{2}$ khtor］ | garlic |
| ип¢ | ［sokh］ | onion |
|  | ［maghadanos，azatk ${ }^{\text {e }}$ egh］ | parsley |
| 川ワリだ | ［pghpegh］ | pepper |
|  | ［kartofil］ | potato |
| ヶ7ாロル | ［dəth um］ | pumpkin，squash |
| 1\％\％4 | ［boghk］ | radish |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{h}}$ arkhun］ | tarragon |
|  | ［lolik］ | tomato |
| 7rusth | ［dth mik］ | zucchini |

## V GRAMMAR

## A. VERBS

## 1. Armenian equivalents of the English auxiliary verb to be

Armenian has three verbs that are equivalent to the English verb to be. They appear in three irregular conjugations and differ in form, meaning, and function.
 links the subject to its complement. It is used to indicate a current state, status, or presence:


Ani is sick.
They are Armenians.

 indicating a current state or presence, $L / K \xi_{L} t_{L}$ refers to a habitual state or presence:

At four o'clock, he/she is (usually) here. Or:


I think, therefore I am (I exist).
 constructions there is ... and there are.

There are many books on the table.
The negative counterparts of the affirmative forms are:

 I am (usually) not or I won't be, You are (usually) not or you won't be, etc.
 are not there or You do not exist, There is no ..., etc.

## 2. The imperfect tense (regular verbs)

The Armenian imperfect tense indicative places an action or an event in the past indicating that it is in progress, habitual or repeated. It consists of the conjugated imperfect forms of the auxiliary verb $\hbar\llcorner[\mathrm{em}] I \mathrm{am}$ and the present participle of the main verb (ending in -пレレீ).

All regular verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（tu） |  | ［－um eyi］ |
| 2nd pers．（qпı） | verb stem＋пLuf 5 ¢ $\boldsymbol{\square}$ | ［－um eyir］ |
| 3rd pers．（\％uw） | verb stem＋nLu 5 ［ | ［－um er］ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers．（ufticte） | verb stem＋пLu 5 thicte | ［－um eyink ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 2nd pers．（qпп¢ $)$ | verb stem＋пLuf 5 ¢． $\mathbf{.}$ | ［－um eyik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 3rd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ | verb stem＋пLu 5 ¢is | ［－um eyin］ |

## IMPERFECT

## 

## affirmative

| （tur） | 4ппレน 5 5 |
| :---: | :---: |
| （7пL） |  |
| （\％ш世） | 4ппレи 5 ¢ |
| （fotup） |  |
| （ $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square}\llcorner\boldsymbol{p}$ ） | 4！пレนf 5t．p |
|  |  |

negative
25！ 4 ［ாпи～


 251．е 4 ！ாиル


## 3．The imperfect tense（irregular verbs）

In the imperfect tense，the most common irregular verbs $\boldsymbol{q}$ funtim $\boldsymbol{L}$［gitenal］to know and $\boldsymbol{\pi L E}$

## IMPERFECT

|  | 4tumbirul［gitenal］to know |  | mLittrul［unenal］to have |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| （tur） | 4 fiuntr | 24tintor | nLitht | とmLith |
| （7пレ） | 4tintir | 24tintrir | пL¢ちゃ！ | をnLEth！ |
| （\％ıu） | 4 timer |  | nListr |  |
| （fLSLP） | 4timetise | 24hinticisp | ncithiste | ¢\＃Lithitup |
| （qпレ¢ ${ }^{(1)}$ | 4huntre | 24timbite | nLithe | 2mLithe |
|  | 4huntis | 24tiontes | nustritu | とnLutpus |


| 4шı์［kam］I exist |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （tu） | 4шл | 24шли |
| （7пL） | 4шлtr | く4ш」！ |
| （\％шu） | 4ш！ | ＜4ш！ |
|  | 4mstis．e |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \times \boldsymbol{p}$ ） |  |  |
|  | 4 ¢ы䛧 | と4шлыки |

qul［gal］to come

чшции 5ヶ口



чш位 5 新

## 3．Uses of the imperfect tense

The Armenian imperfect tense has several equivalents in English translation．When it is used to indicate a continuous action carried out at a certain point in the past，it corresponds to the English past progressive：

## 

［Ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ num eyi $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ oghots $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ov}$ ，yerp $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ez}$ tesa］
I was walking down the street when I saw you．
When the imperfect tense refers to a habitual action in the past without being tied to a par－ ticular time or situation，it is translated into English with the used to construction：

［Nakh ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ kinum na $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ich}{ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ er utum， $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ich}{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ num，shat ashkhatum］
In the past，he used to eat a little，sleep a little，work a lot．
In colloquial speech the imperfect tense indicates a future in the past：

［Isk menk ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ art $^{\mathrm{h}}$ en $\mathrm{g}^{\text {num }}$ eyink ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］
And we were already about to leave．

## B．POSSESSION

In Armenian，possession is mainly expressed by 1）possessive determiners or possessive adjectives，2）possessive articles，or 3）possessive pronouns．

## 1．Possessive adjectives

The possessive adjectives（also called possessive determiners）are：

| 1．huf［im］my | ${ }^{\text {Ltrirl }}$［mer］our |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2． $\mathrm{p}^{\text {n }}$［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {d }} \mathrm{o}$ ）］your（informal） | d $L_{[/ 1}$［dzer］your（plural and formal） |
|  |  |

[^11]Like their English counterparts, Armenian possessive adjectives precede nouns:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { [mer lezun] } \\
& \text { (our language-the) } \\
& \text { our language } \\
& \text { [n`rants }{ }^{\text {b }} \text { yerkirə] } \\
& \text { (their country-the) } \\
& \text { their country }
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that in addition to the possessive adjective preceding the noun, the definite article $-\check{L}$ is affixed to the noun.

## 2. Possessive articles

In addition to possessive adjectives, Armenian also uses possessive articles to express possession. Like the definite article, they are affixed to nouns, expressing both possession and determination. The possessive articles are:

| 1. $-\nu\left[-{ }^{-} \mathrm{s}\right] m y$ |  | [-ner`s] our |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2.-7 [ $\left.-{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{t}\right]$ your (informal) |  | [-ner${ }^{\text {t }}$ ] your (plural / formal) |
| 3. -ц [-ə]/-¢* [-n] his/her/its |  | [-nerv] their |

Examples: umbiun [tun`s] my house unitriu [toners] my houses, our house
 unnLig [tunə] his/her house unitric [tonera] their houses, his/her house

 sessive adjective and possessive articles, are not correct. Instead, only one possessive mark-
 [shunt] your dog, etc.
The possessive article for the third person and the definite article are homonymous. Thus, $2^{m L \Sigma_{L}}$ can have two meanings, depending on the context:

1. $2^{n \pm L_{L}}$ [shunə] the dog
2. $2^{n L \Sigma_{L}}$ [shunə] his/her dog

To further elucidate, the following redundant form (possessive adjective $h_{\Gamma}$ or $\varepsilon_{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_{\boldsymbol{\mu}}+$ $\left.-\Sigma /-\varepsilon_{4}\right)$ is acceptable in the third person singular:


[^12]
## 3. Possessive pronouns

In Armenian, possessive pronouns are nominalized possessive adjectives (see pp. 54-55). Like nouns, they take the definite article - $\quad$ / :

| $\underline{1 \sim}$ | [imə] |  | mine |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ Onə] |  | yours (informal) |
| (1) herster | [irenə] or |  | his/hers/its (see p. 57, section 2) |
|  | [merə] |  | ours |
| ${ }^{1} L^{\prime}$ | [dzerə] |  | yours (formal and plural) |
| (1) hrituge | [irents ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ) ${ }^{\text {or }}$ | (2) Srruirgr [nərants | theirs |

Thus, possession is expressed by the following variety of forms:







$\rightarrow$ hrksgr $\left[\right.$ irents ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ә] theirs


 [Dzzer tunn aveli mets e $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ an merə. Bayts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}^{2}$ rants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \partial^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{r}$ e] Your house is bigger than ours. But theirs is small.

In colloquial speech there are two other common forms that express possession:



[Dzeronk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ vortegh en?]
Where are your folks?

## 

[Meronk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ misht tann en]
My folks are always at home.

## VI ARMENIAN－ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## 1．Gender in Armenian

Gender in Armenian grammar is unmarked，i．e．there is no expressed grammatical distinction for masculine，feminine or even neuter gender as is the case in some European languages（cf． German：der，die，das）．Therefore，in Armenian gender can be discerned from the linguistic context or situation．The only way to express gender in Armenian is with the nominal suffix $-\boldsymbol{\pi} \leqslant \boldsymbol{\mu}$［－uhi］，which forms feminine counterparts from masculine nouns indicating persons：

|  | vs．шマшцた！ | male pupil | vs．female pupil |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| пьшшイппク |  | male student | vs．female student etc． |

Gender distinctions are normally conveyed by distinct words：

| w2914 |  | girl | vs．boy |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ऽшл！ | vs．КீшЈ！ | father | vs．mother，etc |

The Armenian personal pronoun in the third person singular does not express gender as does English with he／she／it and derivations．

## 2．Distinct third－person pronouns

Armenian makes a particular third－person distinction．It has two sets of generic third－person
 sets of third－person pronouns prevent ambiguity when two persons are referred to in the
 refers to the subject of the sentence or to a word to which prominence is given in a context．



## 

［Aramə sirum e ir ənkerochbə ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ yev nəra shanə］
Aram likes his ${ }_{1}$ friend and his $s_{2}$ dog．

 nate with their declined forms hersig their／them and srrwirg their／them．The pronoun



> [Hayerə hargum en irents ${ }^{b}$ hyurerin yev patvum nərants ${ }^{b}$ ]
> Armenians respect their ${ }_{1}$ guests and honor them ${ }_{2}$.


## VII WORD FORMATION

## 1．Derivation of abstract nouns

Nouns in grammar are either concrete（house，man）or abstract（joy，growth）．Most abstract nouns are derived from other parts of speech．The most productive suffixes that build


1．The suffix $-\boldsymbol{\sim} / \nabla_{J} \pi\llcorner\Sigma$ is widely applied to form abstract nouns：
a）from adjectives

| шпшип | ［arat］plenty，abundant |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| пццш | akh］happy，joyful |  |
| дш织 | anr］heavy |  |
| なった | ets］big，great |  |
| แшๆш！ | haghagh］peaceful |  |

b）from verbs

| $p^{\text {List }} t_{L}[\mathrm{k} \bigcirc \mathrm{nnel}]$ to examine |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  <br> tinuation |
|  |  |




2．The suffix $-\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\sim}{ }^{\circ}[-u m]$ creates abstract nouns from verbs：

$\rightarrow$ щшшшгпицf［pasharum］siege
$2^{\omega_{I}}{ }^{\boldsymbol{L} t_{L}}$［sharzhel］to move

$\mathrm{K}_{4} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \mathrm{H}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$［nerel］to forgive
uипレц点［stugel］to check

$\rightarrow$ шипцqпци［stugum］check－up

3．The suffix - －wis．$\left[-\mathrm{ank}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ forms abstract nouns from verbs：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| \＆шгч¢ ${ }_{\text {¢ }}^{\text {［ }}$［marzel］to train，to drill |  |
| ¢pty［tanjel］to tortur |  |

## 2. Derivation of nouns denoting locations and places

There are a few suffixes in Armenian that indicate nouns of location. These suffixes are:


1. The suffix -winng [-anots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] indicates institutional locations. Such nouns are derived from adjectives and nouns:

| $t_{\Gamma}$ [tser] old | $\rightarrow$ \%truming [tseranots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] old age home |
| :---: | :---: |
| ¢/rıwirr [hivand] sick | $\rightarrow$ Shulwtrrwinng [hivandanots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] hospital |
|  |  |
| шי!L听п [arvest] art | $\rightarrow$ wrrltumminng [arvestanots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] art studio |

Only a few nouns ending in -wing [-anots] denote a piece of paper money with a specified amount:
shisq [hing] five $\rightarrow$ s/sqquing [hinganots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] a five-dram-bill (dram=Arm. currency)


2. The suffix -(ш)



3. Nouns ending in -шן

ๆшшшгшк [dasaran] classroom

6шマшןшк [chasharan] restaurant
ऽшиீшишшгшц [hamalsaran] university
цппш!шธ [logharan] bathroom, etc.
Some nouns ending in -шן
шшКшгшк [paharan] closet
шшாடшшாшะ [sainaran] refrigirator
цшгш!шц [vararan] oven, etc.
A number of nouns in -шן


гшгш!шธ [bararan] dictionary, etc.

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The letters 9. 4, 4 4, and $\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{f}$

Consistent with its consonant system, Eastern Armenian manifests itself here, too, with a set of three stops. Rather than a pair of stops, i.e. the voiced (g) and the voiceles (k) of the Indo-European languages, East Armenian has a triple system with one voiced $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{q}}[\mathrm{g}]$ and two voiceless stops, the non-aspirated $\boldsymbol{4}[\mathrm{k}]$ and the aspirated $\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{ }\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$.

Thus, the triple system of the related consonants $\boldsymbol{q}, 4$ and $\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{ }$ can be presented as follows:

| voiced | $\boldsymbol{q}$ | $\boldsymbol{q}$ | $[\mathrm{g}]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| voiceless non-aspirated | $\boldsymbol{4}$ | $\boldsymbol{4}$ | $[\mathrm{k}]$ |
| voiceless aspirated | $\boldsymbol{\rho}$ | $\boldsymbol{\rho}$ | $\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ |

Each of these stops represents an independent phoneme, the smallest phonetic unit in a language to distinguish one word from another. The following three words differ in meaning in the contrast of the phonemic consonants $\boldsymbol{4}, 4$ and $\underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{ }$ :

```
qп# [gogh] thief
4п\eta [kogh] rib, flank
pпr [k'bogh] veil
```





There are some exceptions to this general rule:
a) after vowels, $\boldsymbol{q}[\mathrm{g}]$ is pronounced as a voiceless aspirated $\left[\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ in the following words:








 чшгяц [park ${ }^{\mathrm{e}} \mathrm{ev}$ ] gift, etc.

## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## $b 5$ or 5 5?

There are some orthographic and phonetic rules that are prevalent for the use of $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{t}$ and $\boldsymbol{⺊} 5$.
$\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{t}$ occurs

1. in initial position of words and is pronounced [ye] as in English yesterday:

2. in medial position of words ' $t$ ' and stands for [e] as in English red:

3. in final position of words ' $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ ' and stands for [e]:
 qnagk [guts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e] perhaps, etc.
4. within derivations and compounds where ' $b$ ' is pronounced
a) as [ye] when it appears after vowels:


b) as [e] when it occurs after consonants:


 nounced:
 em] I am going, шипьи 5 [asum en] they say, etc.
 $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{u}} \boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{L}$ [ t gha yes] you are a boy, etc.
5.5 appears
5. in initial position of words and stands for [e] as in English end.

5 \$سז [ezhan] cheap, $5 \boldsymbol{2}$ [ej] page, $5 \boldsymbol{5} 4$ [eyak] creature, etc.
2. in final and medial position of words as a result of compounding or derivation:



## X WRITING

 hin, hinuty, d, simn, 4, 4ku, 2, 2naly, そ, thy

 [kh] [khosel] [ts] [tsai] [k] [kes] [dz] [dzuk] [gh] [agh]






## XI EXERCISES

1. Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column.








2шип 5 ןипипьน:
ぃూ




2. Form mini-dialogues according to the patterns in 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5. Replace the




В. U.ли', шш ןиケч 5:








3. Answer the following questions.









4. Answer the questions following the pattern.







5. Complete the sequences by translating the English text.



d. his Smugtis mLitiv: (I don't. What is your address?)



h. U.
6. Derive abstract nouns from the adjectives.







7. Complete the sentences by inverting the word order.







8. Use an appropriate present-tense form of the verb given in parentheses.








9. How would you say it in Armenian? Make a polite request.
a) You are in class; you need certain things.
a. You need a dictionary.
b. You are looking for a pencil.
c. You need a calculator.
d. You have run out of paper.
e. You are looking for a piece of chalk.
f. You have left your ruler behind at home.
g. You cannot find your eraser.
b) You are sitting around a table with friends; you cannot reach many things.
a. The salt is too far from you.
b. You need a piece of bread.
c. You are thirsty.
d. Your wine glass is empty.
e. The salad is out of reach.
f. You need some pepper.
g. You would like some juice.
c) You are filling out a form for a foreigner. You ask:
a. His/her name.
b. His/her address.
c. His/her telephone number.
d. His/her citizenship.
e. His/her mother tongue.
f. The languages he/she speaks.
10. Answer the questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.







h. $\boldsymbol{ク}^{\circ} \boldsymbol{L}_{\mathcal{L}} 5$ prunus armeniaca-โ:


## XII PROVERBS

 [Sovats mart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ arits $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ap ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ukə kuti] The hungry will eat anything softer than stone.

[Khosk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \partial \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ amin $\mathrm{k}^{\partial}$ tani, keratsə $\mathrm{k}^{ə} \mathrm{~m}^{ə} \mathrm{na}$ ]
What you say, wind will carry away; what you eat, will stay.

[(Mart ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ us) akhorzhakn atami takn e]
A person's appetite is under his teeth.
(Message: Once you start eating, you work up your appetite.)

[Banə ts ${ }^{\ominus}$ nundə chb ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{e}$, banə $\mathrm{s}^{ə}$ nundn e]
It's not the nature, it's the nurture (that counts).

## Unit 4



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Introducing family and friends ..... 68
Vocabulary: Family and relatives ..... 72
Grammar Verbs: The aorist (simple past) ..... 74
Nouns: 1. The declension paradigm ..... 77
2. The nominative and accusative cases ..... 78
Armenian-English Contrasts: Some Armenian expressions of politeness ..... 80
Word Formation: Diminutives ..... 82
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\eta}, \boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{\boldsymbol { n }}$ and $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{\beta}$ ..... 83
Orthography: ก п or 0 - ? ..... 84
Writing:  ..... 85

## I DIALOGUES

1. Two friends, $A$ and B, are looking through a family photo album.

[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sirunik yerekha e]



[Isk ove ays hamakreli kinə?]

[Yeghpor²s n²hanatsn e]

[Isk koghk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ innerə ovk ${ }^{\text {er en? }}$
 [Sa k ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ uyr $^{2} \underbrace{\mathrm{~s}} \mathrm{e}$, isk sa yeghpor${ }^{2} \mathrm{~s} \mathrm{t}^{2}$ ghan e]

[Tsnoghnerit n${ }^{2}$ karə unes?]

[Aha nərank ${ }^{\text {b }}$, nor $n^{\text {²shand }}$ ]

[Du morr n²man es]
B. 9.
[Gitem. Isk sa tatik ${ }^{2}$ e e]
шш 5! щшшן
[sa el papik ${ }^{2} \mathrm{~s}$, mor${ }^{2}$ s ts ${ }^{\ominus}$ noghnerə]

[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{t}}$ an yeritasartut en!]

[Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$, sa hin n ${ }^{\curvearrowright}$ kar e]

[Tat²s hima inn ${ }^{2}$ sun tarekan e]

[Kartsem nor tesa nəran aygum]


What a lovely baby!

He is my nephew, six months old.

She is my brother's fiancée.

And who are those next to her?
2. $A$ and $B$ are getting to know each other.

[Tsanot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anank $^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Anun²s Aram e]

[Urakh em tsanot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ analu hamar]
U/ィィши Иұшшгјши:
[Minas Azaryan]

[Isk sa kin³ $\underbrace{\text { e }}$, Karinen]

[Shat urakh em]
 [Tanterə dzer inchb'in e,]

[dzer yeghpayrn e?]

[Ayo! Isk duk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yeghpors ${ }^{2}$ onkern $\underbrace{\text { b }}$ ?]
A. $\Pi^{\prime}$, шг
[Voch ${ }^{\mathbf{h}}$, ashkhatakits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ )
3. $A$ is introducing her friend, $B$, to her mother, $C$.

[Chbem kartsum vor irar tsanot $\underbrace{\text { b }}$ enk $^{\frac{b}{b}}$ ]

[Mayrik, sa Aramn e, dasənker²s]

[Aram, tsanot ats $^{\text {b }}$ ir, mayr ${ }^{2}$ s e]

[Aram. Shat urakh em, tikin]

[Dzer masin shat em låsel]

[Urakh em vor verchi apes]

Let's get to know each other.

My name is Aram.

I am pleased to meet you.

Minas Azarian.

And this is my wife, Karine.

A pleasure to meet you.

How is the host related to you?

[andzamb em tsanot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anum]

[Nəmanapes]
 [Aram, ari myusnerin el]

[kez tsanot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ats $^{\text {b }}$ 。nem]

[Sirov, gə ${ }^{2}$ nank $^{\text {b }}$ !]
in person at last.

Likewise.

Aram, let me introduce
you to the others as well.

Gladly, let's go!

## II TEXT

## 

[Hor khorhurt ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ə]


 Vortinerə chbley ${ }^{\text {² }}$ sum irents ${ }^{b}$ horə. Mi or hayrə hramayets $\underbrace{b} \underbrace{\text { mi }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ akhavel beren.


 bayts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}}$ 2karoghats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ an kotrel. Ayn zhamanak hayrə $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ andets $\mathrm{s}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ akhavelə yev shyugherə
 mek-mek $t^{2}$ vets ${ }^{b}$ vort $^{\mathrm{b}}$ inerin, vor kotren. Vort ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ inerə heshtut ${ }^{\text {t }}$ yamb kotrets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ in arandzin
 shyugherə. Apa hayrə asats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ vort ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ inerin. - Ayspes el duk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, yet $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{h}}$ irar


 dzez mek-mek kotrela hesht k lini.]

## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

| $\leqslant_{\text {пr }}$（genitive from $\leqslant_{\text {uנן }}$ father） | ［hor］ | father＇s |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［khorhurt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | advice |
|  | ［khorhurt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ tal］ | to advise |
| ппヶt | ［vort ${ }^{\text {i }}$ ］ | son |
| Surftrueztu | ［hamerashkh］ | in harmony |
| шш！$\square^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［aprel］ | to live |
| ¢rıur ¢Lın | ［irar het］ | with each other |
| $L^{u t} L^{\prime}$ | ［lasel］ | to listen to，to obey |
| hricty | ［irents ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | their |
|  | ［mi or］ | one day |
|  | ［hramayel］ | to order |
| gw｜umith | ［ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ akhavel］ | birch－broom |
| $\mathrm{P}^{\text {teratas}}$ | ［berel］ | to bring，to fetch |
| шгш9ш！ | ［ȧach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arkel］ | to propose |
| 4пип近 | ［kotrel］ | to break |
| ¢mпnta | ［ports ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el］ | to try |
| Рш」я | ［bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | but |
|  | ［karoghanal］ | to be able |
|  | ［ayn zhamanak］ | at that time，then |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ andel］ | to untie |
| $2 J^{\prime \prime 2}$ | ［shyugh］ | twig |
|  | ［mek－mek］ | one by one |
| milty（past from unшц to give） | ［ ${ }^{2}$ vets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | gave |
|  | ［heshtut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yamb］ | with ease |
|  | ［arandzin］ | separate，single |
| шлшщ泣 5 | ［ayspes el］ | this way，thus |
| t／みt | ［yet ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ］ | if |
| 际 | ［irar］ | each other |
| ш上์пL！ | ［amur］ | strong |
| En¢ftal | ［brinel］ | to hold |
|  | ［voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mekə］ | nobody |
|  | ［haght ${ }^{\text {el］}}$ | to vanquish |
| 1．44 | ［isk］ | but |
| 4ruthe | ［ ${ }^{\text {rivel］}}$ ］ | to fight |
| furnitul | ［khərovel］ | to get alienated |
|  | ［hesht kəlini］ | it will be easy |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

|  | [Ontanik ${ }^{\text {b }}$, azgakanner] | FAMILY, RELATIVES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | [tsnoghner] | parents |
|  | [hayr(ik), papa] | father |
|  | [mayr(ik), mama] | mother |
| пгпt, unףш | [ vort $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{t}^{2} \mathrm{gha}$ ] | son |
| แпп | [t² gha] | boy |
|  | [dust ${ }^{\text {r }}$, aghch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ ] | daughter |
| wz294 | [aghch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ ] | girl |
| щшш ( 14 ) | [pap(ik)] | grandfather |
| ппшย ( 144 ) | [tat(ik)] | grandmother |
|  | [ ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ori (nik) $]$ | (little) grandchild |
| дпп | [tsor] | great-grandchild |
|  | [yeghpayr] | brother |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{uyr}$ ] | sister |
|  | [horeghpayr] | paternal uncle |
|  | [ horak $^{\text {b }}$ uyr] | paternal aunt |
| $p^{\text {trath }}$ | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{erii}$ ] | maternal uncle |
| кппшепплЈ | [morak ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{uyr}$ ] | maternal aunt |
|  | [zarmik] | cousin (male) |
|  | [zarmuhi] | cousin (female) |
|  | [amusin] | husband |
| 414 | [kin] | wife, woman |
|  | [khort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mayr, mayrats ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{u}$ ] | stepmother |
|  | [khort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ hayr, hayrats ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{u}$ ] | stepfather |
| еш近 | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ avor] | best man |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {nk }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ a hayr] | godfather |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ avorakin] | best man's spouse |
|  | [ $\mathrm{k}^{2} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ amayr] | godmother |


| ¢12micult | ［ ${ }^{2}$ shhanvel］ | to get engaged |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢ィшโиш | ［ ${ }^{2}$ shanats］ | fiancé |
| โマшโйшன | ［ ${ }^{2}$ shanvats］ | engaged |
|  | ［amusnanal］ | to marry，to get married |
|  | ［amusnats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ats］ | married |
| шиппL！ | ［amuri］ | bachelor |
|  | ［harsanik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | wedding |
|  | ［amusnalutsut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | divorce |
|  | ［bazhanvel］ | to get divorced |
|  | ［bazhanvats］ | divorced |
| шлп！ | ［ayri］ | widow（er） |
|  | ［ orp $^{\text {b }}$ ］ | orphan |
|  | ［khnami（ner）］ | in－law（s） |
| 4\％LJ | ［zuyk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | couple |
|  | ［（s）kesur］ | mother－in－law（husband＇s mother） |
|  | ［（s）kesrayr］ | father－in－law（husband＇s father） |
| qпеш位 | ［ zok $^{\text {b }}$ anch $^{\text {b }}$ ］ | mother－in－law（wife＇s mother） |
| แ¢t！ | ［aner］ | father－in－law（wife＇s father） |
|  | ［hars］ | daughter－in－law，sister－in－law，bride |
| ¢шгиโишуп | ［harsnats ${ }^{\text {u }}$ ］ | bride，bride－to－be |
| ¢1tum | ［ $p^{\text {b }}$ esa］ | son－in－law，brother－in－law，bridegroom |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{esats}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{u}$ ］ | bridegroom |
| นпบ | ［tal］ | sister－in－law（husband＇s sister） |
| unty | ［tek ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{r}$ ］ | brother－in－law（husband＇s brother） |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ eni］ | sister－in－law（wife＇s sister） |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {e }}$ enakal］ | husband of the wife＇s sister |
|  | ［anerdzak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | brother－in－law（wife＇s brother） |
| $5_{\text {tritum }}$ | ［yerekha］ | child |
| ヶึшโாレ4 | ［manuk］ | infant |
| щุшптธ์／ | ［patani］ | adolescent |

## V GRAMMAR

## A．VERBS

## 1．The aorist（simple past）tense

The aorist or the simple past is the only simple tense in the conjugation paradigm of the Armenian indicative mood．It expresses a completed action in the past without any impli－ cation of duration or progression．Examples： $\boldsymbol{4} \Gamma^{1} \mathrm{tg}$ I I have written or I wrote from $4 \Gamma^{1} \mathrm{~L}$
 ity of regular verbs that belong to the first（infinitive ending in $-t_{l}$ ）and second conjugation （infinitive ending in $\boldsymbol{- w}_{L}$ ）．What follows is a conjugation paradigm of the verbs $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{I}} \boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ and


| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（tu） <br> 2nd pers．（qпп） <br> 3rd pers．（4шu） |  | ```[verb stem + etstr}\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{b}}\textrm{i}/\mp@subsup{\mathrm{ ats}}{}{\textrm{s}}\textrm{i}\mathrm{ i] [verb stem + ets}\mp@subsup{\mp@code{S}}{}{\mathbf{b}}\textrm{ir}/\mp@subsup{\mathrm{ ats}}{}{\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{ir} [verb stem + etss``` |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers．（ $\boldsymbol{f}$ Kitep） <br> 2nd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{\sim})$ <br>  |  | ```[verb stem + etss [verb. stem + etss [verb. stem + etsg}\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{b}}\mathrm{ in/ats.s``` |

## AORIST

|  | $41^{\text {F／L }}$ |  | 4ш［r\％ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| （tu） | $4 r^{\text {brght }}$ | 24rrogh |  |  |
| （qロレ） | $4 r^{\text {atgher }}$ | 24raghr |  |  |
| （\％uw） | $4 \Gamma^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{g}$ | $240^{\text {b }}$ ¢ | Чшгтшу | ＜4шГףшす |
| （fLLs．p） | 4raghtep | 24raghid |  |  |
| $\left(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{L}_{\text {¢ }}\right.$ ） | $4 r^{\text {LHaghe }}$ | 24 $r^{\text {boght }}$ | 4ш！rшugt？ |  |
|  | $4 r^{\text {ataghs }}$ | 24150gis |  | と4ш！＇тшgis |



 mҺшшร they saw．

Knowledge of the aorist forms is important as other verbal forms are derived either from the infinitive or the aorist stem．Here are some basic rules for the aorist stem construction：


| Infinitive | AORIST STEM | AORIST（1st pers．sing．） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $4 r^{-5}$ | 4 $\Gamma^{\text {Lrg }}$－ |  |
| 4шГワーш！ | 4шГワшクー | 4шгףшл－l I read |

2．dropping the infixes $-\varepsilon_{-}$－and $-\varepsilon^{-}$from verbs（plus ending $-\boldsymbol{-}$ ）：

|  | ［544－ |  | I fell |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | untu－ | แกเน－ш | I saw |
|  | 4пr－ | 4 ¢п－ш | I disappeared |



| ヶんよ－шโーш⿺ to grow big | ヶんちゃшク |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | วtrumg－ |  |
|  | щшןよちy－ | щшן⿱⿱亠䒑䶹欠ターш I boasted |



| Strugitht to remove | Strumgr－ | Strumgrib |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| дfamitgurtal to make laugh |  |  |

The following verbs have irregular aorist forms：









The negative forms of the aorist are constructed by prefixing the negative marker $\mathcal{z}$－：


mrigh I did or I have done $\rightarrow$ \＆wrigh I didn＇t do or I haven＇t done

шгш I took or I have taken $\rightarrow$ ұшாш I didn＇t take or I haven＇t taken

[^13]
## 2. Uses of the aorist tense

The Armenian aorist or simple past tense has several equivalents in English translation. With reference to usual activities in the past, it corresponds to the English simple past:

[Yerek na yerkar ashkhatetss ${ }^{\text {b }}$, gortsə verch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ats $^{\text {b }}$ rets $^{\text {b }}$ u gə nats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
Yesterday he worked for a long time, finished his business and left.
As mentioned before, the aorist or simple past tense denotes an action completed at some point in the past without any implication of the duration or progression. In this sense, it differs from the Armenian imperfect tense, which indicates a past action in progress:

## \&

[ ${ }^{2}$ karum eyi, yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ du ners mtar]
I was painting when you came in.
The Armenian aorist can be viewed as the equivalent of the English present perfect, which refers to a past action that has current relevance:

[Patuhanə kotrets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i]
I have broken the window.


Thus we haven't spoken any more.

It is important to note that the Armenian aorist differs from other past tenses in that it is the witness' tense. It is used only if the speaker has either witnessed the activity or if he/she can speak about it with absolute certainty.
The aorist has various secondary functions in colloquial Armenian:
a) as an action very close to the present time or one that is to follow immediately in time.

Note in the following example the translation of $\boldsymbol{q}^{\text {tumgh }}$ as I am going:

[Yes im aselik ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ n asats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{i}$; hima du gites]
I said what I had to say; now it's up to you.
b) it can be used as a directive, an appeal for immediate action:

## 

[Shut $\operatorname{arek}^{\mathrm{b}}$, zharzh ${ }^{\text {² }} \mathrm{vets}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ink $^{\mathrm{b}}$ !]
Hurry up, let's go!
c) in conditional sentences, the aorist can replace the subjunctive mood.

[Yekar, $\mathrm{k}^{2} \mathrm{~g}^{\curvearrowright} \mathrm{nank}^{\mathrm{b}}$; ch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ekar, $\mathrm{k}^{\curvearrowright} \mathrm{m}^{\ominus} \mathrm{nank}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
If you come, we'll go; if you don't come, we'll stay.


## B. NOUNS

## 1. The declension paradigm

To fulfill various syntactic functions in a sentence, nouns and pronouns in some languages have an extensive declension system. In other languages, these functions are performed by prepositions and postpositions (see Unit 7, pp. 158-159). English and Armenian have both, although Armenian has a more elaborate system of noun and pronoun declensions.*

Nouns in Armenian have an elaborate declension paradigm, which may overwhelm the English speaker. They change forms either by taking case markers, by undergoing vowel alternations or inner permutations, or by doing both (see Unit 5, pp. 107-108).

Armenian has seven cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative, instrumental, and locative. The first four cases, nominative and accusative, genitive and dative, form two pairs that may correspond in form but differ in syntactic function. The following specific questions address the different functions of each case:

| Cases | person |  | non-person |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nominative: | $\pi \pi^{\circ} 4$ | [ov?] who? |  | ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ (ə)?] what? |
| Accusative: |  | [um?] whom? |  | ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ? ] what? |
| Genitive: | \%iLuf | [um?] whose? |  | ${ }^{\mathbf{4}} \mathrm{i}$ ?] whose? of what? |
| Dative: | กi้นf | [um?] to whom? |  | $\mathrm{i}(\mathrm{n})$ ?] tolfor what? |
| Ablative: | HLffig | [umits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ?] from whom? | $\boldsymbol{H L u} \boldsymbol{H}^{\circ} \mathrm{g}$ g | its ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ? from what? |
| Instrumental: | - |  |  | ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{Ov}$ ?] with what? |
| Locative: | - |  |  | [inch'bum? in what? |
|  | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nominative: |  |  |  |  |
| Accusative: |  |  |  | т |
| Genitive: |  |  |  |  |
| Dative: |  |  |  |  |
| Ablative: |  |  |  |  |
| Instrumental: |  |  |  |  |
| Locative: | - | - |  |  |

[^14]
## 2. The nominative and accusative cases

The nominative case in singular is the citation form of nouns as they appear in dictionaries. It is the initial form in a declension paradigm and has no explicit case markers. It can, however, be used with or without determiners, i.e. a definite article (-г/-ч) (see Unit 1 , p. 13) or a possessive article ending in $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\xi}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ (see p. 55) as the case may be.

The noun in the nominative case serves primarily as the subject of a sentence, a topic about which a comment is made:

## 

[Anahitə var guyner er sirum]
Anahit liked bright colors.

## 9.пгұи $\boldsymbol{\text { ィпп }}$ 5:

[Gorg² ${ }^{2}$ nor e]
My carpet is new.
 subjects and appear in the nominative case. They can be elicited in response to the ques-

The secondary syntactic function of the nominative case is also to serve as subject complement, linked to the subject by the auxiliary verb tis or other copular verbs:

[Yeghpayr${ }^{2}{ }^{s} b^{2}$ zhishishe]
My brother is a physician.

[Aramə mənum e ənkerəs]
Aram remains my friend.



 are used in the nominative case.

The accusative varies depending on the semantics of the noun. Eastern Armenian makes a person vs. non-person distinction: nouns that indicate persons use explicit case markers, namely the dative form (see p. 77) while nouns for non-persons do not change, thus coinciding with the nominative. In a sentence, the accusative performs the following functions:
a) A direct object governed by a transitive verb:

## 

[Hayrə govum e vorth un]
The father praises his son.
 [Nkarner²s tesar?]
Have you seen my pictures?
 direct objects of the transitive verbs $\boldsymbol{q} \pi \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{\mathbf{L}}$ [govel] to praise and $m \boldsymbol{m}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \mathrm{K}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ [tesnel] to see respectively. Note that in the first sentence, the question asked is ( $\boldsymbol{n}^{\circ}\llcorner\mathbb{f}$ ) [um?] whom? with
 [vort ${ }^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{i}$ ] correspond to the dative case (see pp. 102-103). In the second sentence the ques-
 that coincides with the nominative case.
b) A local adverb that answers the question $\pi^{\circ}\llcorner\Gamma$ [ur?] where?

[Verchb ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ apes tun yeka]
At last I came home.

[Yerp ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{em}^{\text {n }}$ gradaran eyi $\mathrm{g}^{\text {num }}$ ]
I used to go to the library sometimes.

c) A temporal adverbial that answers the question $\boldsymbol{E}^{\circ} \boldsymbol{L}^{\boldsymbol{R}}$ [yerp ${ }^{\mathrm{L}}$ ?] when?

## 

[Mi or el na anhetats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ av]
One day he disappeared.

[Hajort ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ tari $\mathrm{k}^{\text {tesn }}{ }^{\text {² }} \mathrm{venk}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
Next year we will see each other.

Here, or [or] and mшги [tari] are unmarked nouns used as adverbials of time.
d) An adverbial indicating measurements and sizes (miles, kilograms, pounds, litres, etc.):

## 

[Yerek ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ bazhak gini khºmets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i]
I drank three glasses of wine.

Sшиц
[Tasə m²ghon $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ aylets ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ink $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
We walked ten miles.
 $\mathrm{m}^{\text {}} \mathrm{g}$ hon] ten miles take the accusative case. The following questions apply:

> [Vork ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ an gini kh${ }^{ } \mathrm{mets}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ir?]
> How much wine did you drink?

[Vork ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ an $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ aylets $\mathrm{S}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ik}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ?]
How long did you walk?

The nominative plural takes the ending - $\left(\xi_{\mu}\right) t_{[ }$, which can appear with or without determiners, i.e. a definite article ( $-\Sigma /-\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{u}}$ ) or possessive article ( $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\eta}$ or $\left.-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\Sigma}\right)$. This, however, does not apply to nouns that have the plural ending - $\boldsymbol{\boldsymbol { p }},-\boldsymbol{- 1 4}$, and $-\boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ (see p. 33) as these plural endings do not take the articles - $\boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ :

[Yerekhanern ushats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an]
The children are late.
[Mart ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}^{\mathrm{b}}$ (tiknayk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ) ushats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an]
The people (the ladies) are late.
For the direct object, the accusative plural makes the same person vs. non-person distinction as the accusative singular. Nouns indicating persons use their genitive-dative case while nouns for non-persons use the nominative-accusative form:

[Pashtpanenk ${ }^{6}$ yerekhanerin]
Let's protect the children!
[Pashtpanenk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mer antainerə!]
Let's protect our forests!

## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Some Armenian expressions of politeness

Like all languages, Armenian has conventionally established conversation units, or gambits (see Appendix, p. 301), which are bound by socio-cultural conventions and, most of


 responds to the English please:

[Asa khnt ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ rem .../ Asats ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{kh}^{\curvearrowright}{ }^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{n}^{\mathrm{h}}$ rem ...]
Tell me, please, ...

[Patuhanə $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ akem? Ayo, khənt ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ rem]
"Shall I close the window?" "Yes, please."


[Durə bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arek $^{\mathrm{b}}$, khənt ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ rem!]
Open the door, please!

 other conventional expressions:


[Shnorakal em. - Khnt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ rem]
"Thank you!" "You are welcome!" or "Don't mention it!"or "My pleasure!"


- hiverlitus: [Khənt ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ rem] Here you are!


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { [ } \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{b}} \text { uyl ktak }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { dzer } \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ert}^{\mathrm{h}} \text { ə kart }{ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{al} \text { ? - Kh }{ }^{\text {nt }}{ }^{\mathrm{h}} \text { rem] } \\
& \text { "May I please read your newspaper?" "By all means!" or "Sure!" or "Please do!" }
\end{aligned}
$$

2. The very common conversation tool $4 \boldsymbol{4} \boldsymbol{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L F}^{\circ} \boldsymbol{5}$ [kareli e?] May I is used to ask for permission before
a) entering a room:
b) doing something:
c) saying something:

[Kareli e?]
May I (come in)?

[Kareli e portss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el?]
May I try it?

[Kareli e mi ban asel)?]
May I say something?

a) As a polite response to a request for permission:

b) As a polite incitement to accept an offer of food or drinks:

- Zur゙にgt'p: Help yourself!
c) As a welcome to guests entering the house:
- Zwiftgt'p: Come in, please!

4. In everyday talk, there are a few expressions of kindness and hospitality, containing the word шโппцг [anush] sweet.
 ral) correspond to the English Enjoy! or Enjoy it! These expressions accompany the act of offering food:

```
    "Help yourself!" "Enjoy it!"
```

 one's appreciation of the food just enjoyed:

## 

[Chashə shat hamegh e(r)] [Anush lini!]
"The meal is/was very tasty." "I am glad you enjoyed it!"
c) U. to a guest who has just emptied a glass of wine or any other drink on a happy occasion.

|  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [Kenats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ t] | [Dzer kenats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ) | [Anush lini] |
| "To your health!'" |  | "Enjoy it!" |

## VII WORD FORMATION

## Diminutives

Armenian has three suffixes that create diminutives：$-\boldsymbol{h 4}$［ik］，$-\boldsymbol{\omega} 4$［ak］and $-\pi\llcorner 4$［uk］．They impart to the noun the meaning of smallness（in size or value），affection，endearment，but also degradation or debasement on the part of the speaker．

1．All three suffixes $-1 / 4$ ，$-\boldsymbol{m}$ ，and $-\pi \leq 4$ are added to nouns；their selection，however，is predetermined．Each noun combines with a specific suffix：

| ánı4［dzuk］fish | $\rightarrow$ d4¢14［dzºknik］little fish |
| :---: | :---: |
| Lf6［lich］lake |  |
| wrl［arch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］bear | $\rightarrow$ wr9nı4［archi ${ }^{\text {uk］}}$ ］little bear |

2．The most productive diminutive suffix－ 14 creates the largest number of diminutives：


```
2пL& [shun] dog 
```


a）Nouns denoting close relatives appear with $-1 \mathbf{1 4}$ ，expressing intimacy or familiarity：

| $\boldsymbol{u} \boldsymbol{\prime}^{\text {［ }}$［hayr］father | $\rightarrow$ ¢mjrht［hayrik］daddy |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $\rightarrow$ ernsrth［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ uyrik］sis |
| щшщ［рap］grandfather | $\rightarrow$ щшщ户ц［papik］grandp |

b）Added to proper names，-14 expresses a subjective or emotional attitude toward a person：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\boldsymbol{U}$ шг¢ишீ［Mariam］ |  |
|  |  |

Longer names form diminutives by adding the suffix－ 14 to the first syllable of the name：

| Lrıu／ikt［Lusine］ | $\rightarrow$ LпLuh4［Lusik］ |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | $\rightarrow$ IVwヶ／44［Khach ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ ］ |
| 々пリ｜̧wictur［Hovhannes］ | $\rightarrow$ 2nulh4［Hovik］ |

c）The suffix -14 and $-\pi\llcorner 4$ may also be attached to adjectives．When referring to or addressing a person or an object，they indicate affection or fondness：





## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The letters \% ヶ, $\boldsymbol{S} \boldsymbol{\sim}$, and $\boldsymbol{\beta} \boldsymbol{\beta}$

Rather than a double system of stop consonants, i.e. the voiced $\mathbf{d}$ and the voiceless $\mathbf{t}$, East Armenian has a triple system with one voiced $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{\eta}}[\mathrm{d}]$ and two voiceless stops, the non-aspirated $\boldsymbol{\pi}[\mathrm{t}]$ and the aspirated $\not \subset\left[\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$ :

The triple system of the related consonants $\boldsymbol{\eta}$, $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ and $\not \subset$ can be presented as follows:

| voiced | 7.7 [d] |
| :---: | :---: |
| voiceless non-aspirated | $S$ нп [t] |
| voiceless aspirated | $\boldsymbol{\beta} \boldsymbol{\beta}\left[\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$ |

Like in the case of $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{P}}, \mu_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ and $\not \boldsymbol{\mu}$, each of these consonants is an independent phoneme, i.e. the smallest phonetic unit that distinguishes one word from another. The following three words differ in meaning in the contrast of the phonemic consonants $\boldsymbol{q}$, $\boldsymbol{\varkappa}$ and $\boldsymbol{f}$ :

```
7trr}\mathrm{ [der] role
untr
|t!r, [th er] for (as opposed to qtus [dem] against)
```






There are words that constitute exceptions to this rule with the voiced $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{z}}$ [d] pronounced as








 [khekhtel] to strangle, sпrццш [hotvats] article, etc. The same applies to the possessive


## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## ก п or 0 。?

The following orthographic and phonetic rules govern the usage of the letters $\boldsymbol{\Pi} \pi$ and $\boldsymbol{0}$ o in East Armenian:

П п occurs:

1. in initial position of words and is pronounced [vo] as in English volt:

2. in medial and final position of words, ' $n$ ' is pronounced [ o ] as in the English word folk:

3. within compound and derived words where ' $n$ ' is pronounced
a) as [vo] when it appears after vowels:
 navorakyal] most qualified (superlative of the adjective ппшијши qualified, etc.
b) as [o] when it appears after consonants:



ExCEPTION 1: The initial $\boldsymbol{n} \pi$ is pronounced [o] in the pronoun $n \boldsymbol{\mu}$ [ov] who and its plu-

 than the regular $\cap \pi$ in initial position:

цпцчш [Volga] a river in Russia (Russian: Волга), цпии [volt] volt, etc.

0 o occurs:

1. in initial position of words and stands for [o] as in English on or all: $o_{\boldsymbol{\prime}}[\mathrm{or}]$ day, oq $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{L}}^{\boldsymbol{L}}\left[\mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{nel}\right]$ to help, or $\left[\mathrm{ot}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ air, weather, etc.
2. within words, where o appears as a result of compounding or derivation:


 example) etc.

## X WRITING



2. 2nLr,
$\%, 4$
』. $\quad$ !nL $r$,
[j] [jur]
ц, цию, $S, \quad$ яшии,

4

[veradarts ${ }^{\text {b }}$
the thenen, f, the, b, bumb, \&, S2zme, \& the tpuen, fie fhe, B, Gimkb, \&, \$ezme, lint


## XI EXERCISES

1．Combine questions from the left column with appropriate responses from the right column．

b．$\quad \Pi^{\circ}\llcorner ⿺$ ип иншшр шлшоп：






Дшшпппィィ


นீшлグイス
${ }_{5}{ }^{2}+4$

tritp dur

2．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in 1，2，3，and 4．Replace tюшлן with








B． $\boldsymbol{b}$ и К！


3．Complete the sentences according to the pattern．















5．Complete the sentences using the words in the parentheses as diminutives．







6．Complete the sentences，following the example in a．






g．\＆ш ш
7．Insert the appropriate Armenian greeting．


c．．．．，шпшшл 4 4：（Good night！）



g．．．．，ェnthits：（See you later！）

8．Form interrogative sentences，concluding with the following words．
a． $\qquad$

b．

c．

d．

e．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．zulritgfict：
f．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．$\quad$ แ！ $\boldsymbol{r}^{\circ} \Gamma^{\text {：}}$
g．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．шгfшшиビリ：
9. How would you say it in Armenian?
a. May I introduce to you my relatives?
b. This is my uncle (my mother's brother: $p^{t r n} \boldsymbol{f}$ ).
c. This is my uncle's wife.
d. This is my grandfather.
e. This is my grandmother.

10. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.








## XII PROVERBS

 [Havə $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{h}}$ evove $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}$ əreh $^{\mathrm{h}}$ um, mart ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{n}$ azgakanov] Birds fly with their wings, humans with their kin.

[Tsera tan syunn e]
The elder is the pillar of the house.

[Vort ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ in horn e $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ashum, akhch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ikə morə]
A son takes after his father, a daughter after her mother.

[Metsats ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{av}$, mets ts ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ av darts ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{av}$ ]
(Your child) grew, your pain grew.

## Unit 5



## On the Agenda

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Asking for an opinion and expressing one ..... 90
Vocabulary: Clothes, colors ..... 94
Grammar: Verbs: The perfect and pluperfect tenses ..... 96
Nouns: 1. Declension types ..... 100
2. The genitive and dative cases ..... 102
Armenian-English Contrasts: 1. Impersonal sentences ..... 105
2. Expressions of personal preference ..... 106
Word Formation: Vowel alterations and mutations ..... 107
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{q}}^{\boldsymbol{q}}$ and $\boldsymbol{\|} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ ..... 109
Orthography: bly, ther or ..... 110

## I DIALOGUES

1. A has invited B, a friend, to his/her new apartment. B's opinion is important to $A$.
A. そш!
[Havanum es nor bnakaran²s?]

[Ayo, shat em havanum]

Yes, I like it very much.
[Nor es teghap ${ }^{4}$ okhvel]

[Ayo. Durət galis e tesaranə?]

[Shat. Kahuyk ${ }^{\text {t }}$ el e geghets ${ }^{\text {bik }}$ ]


9ппппи untu: 9.tritght 5, $25^{\circ}$ :
Look at my carpet! It's beautiful, isn't it?
[Gorg ${ }^{2}$ s tes! Geghets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ik e, ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e?]

It's wonderful! Is it Armenian?
[Hianali e. Haykakan e?]

Yes. And what do you think
[Ayo. Isk inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kartsik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ es]

[ays yughan²kari masin?]
B. цши 25 :

It's not bad.
[Vat chhe]

[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e, durət cher ekav?]
B. शよ\&
[D²zhvaranum em asel]

[Zhamanakakits ${ }^{\text {¹ }}$ arvestə $^{\text {ch }}{ }^{\text {h }}$ em haskanum]
2. $A$ is on her way to the theatre when she meets her friend $B$ :
 [Ur ayspes, zuk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ vats-zart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arvats?]
A. Дшшпппโ: 之ш! [ $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{b}}$ atron. Havanum es hak ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ust}^{\text {² }}$ ?]
 [Ayo, shat sirun e. Nor e?]
 [Ayo. Isk gəlkhark²s dur²t galis e?]
 [Da el e nor? Barov mashes]

[Koshikner ${ }^{2}$ s ch ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{2} \mathrm{n}^{\circ}$ katets ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ir]
 [Anshusht $n^{2}$ katets ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{i}$; miayn $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{e}$ ]
 [kərunknerə shat barts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ə r chben?
 [Ayo, barts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ r en yev hok ${ }^{\text {b }}$ num em]

[Bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kin enk ${ }^{b}$, chbe?]

To the theatre. Do you like my dress?

Yes, it's very nice. Is it new?

Yes. And how do you like my hat?

Is that also new? Wear it in good health!

You didn't notice my shoes.

Of course I noticed them; only aren't the heels too high?

Yes, they are high and I get tired. But we're women, aren't we?
3. $A$ is a customer, $B$ is a sales lady in a department store.

[Karogh ek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ indz ts $s^{b}$ uyts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ tal]
 [tss ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{uts}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ap $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{h}}$ eghki kapuyt hak ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ustə? ]

[Khntrem. Uzum ek ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ orts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el?]

[Vochh ${ }^{\text {b }}$, urishi hamar e]

Could you show me
the blue dress in the window?

Sure! Would you like to try it on?

No, it's for someone else.



Don't you have a smaller size?

This is the only one, that's why it's on sale.

What is the final price?

Very cheap. Ten thousand drams.

That's great! I'll buy it.

## II TEXT

##  <br> [Anahitə yev hayelinerə]

 [Yerp $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{uyr}^{2} \mathrm{~s}$, Anahitə, der $\mathrm{p}^{\mathbf{h}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{r}$ er, shat er sirum vai guynerə; var karmirə
 yev vai narənjaguynə nəra guynern eyin. Na shat er sirum nayev hayelinerə.
 Ur vor gənar, mi hayeli er gətnum, u arach ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}} \partial$ kangnats ir tesk ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ ov hianum.
 Hakustə nəra hamar shat karevor er. Mi or əzgestn er, myus orə koshikə






 Anahitə haytni nəkarchahi e yev hianali tantikin. Isk hayelinerə?
 Hima yerekhaner ${ }^{2}$ s en hayeliner ${ }^{2}$ s. $N^{2}{ }^{2}$ ants $^{b}$ mech ${ }^{h}$ em tesnum indz, asum e na.

## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

| Sujtı | ［hayeli］ | mirror | пL¢titum | ［uzenal］to wish |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | when | 25］пьqпии | ［ch＇l ${ }^{\text {er unum］didn＇t wish }}$ |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{uyr}$ ］ | sister | ¢wqutt | ［ $\mathrm{hak}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{nel}$ ］to wear |
| 7 \％ta | ［der］ | still，yet | 7－4Гワフ | ［d²prots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］school |
| ¢！п！ | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\boldsymbol{h}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{r}^{\mathrm{r}}$ ］ | small，young | นึшл！ | ［mayr］mother |
| w 29 ¢4 | ［achch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ | girl |  | usahat］desperate |
| ${ }_{4}^{4}$ | ［sirel］ | to love，to like |  | ${ }^{\text {b }}$ 2mahach］capricious |
| ¢шп | ar］ | bright |  | achakh］often |
| 472．j | ［guyn］ | color | 470nticum | gitenal］to know |
|  | ［karmir］ | red |  | ［anel］to do |
|  |  |  | 24humbur，his \％ | $\mathrm{ch}^{\text {b }}$ 2gitem，inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anem］ |
|  | ［ n ra］ | his／her／its | แ｜tho | don＇t know what to do． |
| ¢ıulı | ［nayev］ | also |  | ［ ${ }^{\text {okhbuel］}}$ to change |
| пL！пп | vor］ | wherever | 4ヶппи近 | ［ ${ }^{2} \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ okhvi］she＇ll change |
| $4^{4 \times 10}$ | nal | to go | Кшли | ［hayr］fat |
|  |  |  |  | metsanal］to grow older |
|  |  | she would go |  | yerp metsana］ |
| qumitil | ［ $\mathrm{g}^{\text {tnel }}$ ］ | to find |  | hen she grows olde |
| шпшףן | $\operatorname{ach}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | t of it |  | avats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i］ |
| 4шโч¢иб | ［kangnats］ | anding | ш | sor］today |
| ntiup | ［tesk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | ook |  | ［haytni］well－known |
| ¢ритиши | ［hianal］ | to admire | ¢4 | karchb ${ }^{\text {u }}$ ui］painter（fem．） |
|  | ［ hak $^{\text {b }}$ ust | clot | 51 | ianali］wonderfur |
| צ！\％ | ［nəra ham | r h |  | ntikin］homemaker |
|  | ［karevor］ | important | 144 | k］what about ．．． |
| ヶf\％or | － | one day | Spus | ma］now |
|  | y | another day | ${ }_{5} r^{2}$ | erekha］child |
| 27ヶши | ［ ${ }^{\text {zggest］}}$ | dres | Erfusty | rants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mech ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］in them |
| $4 \pi 214$ | ［koshik］ | shoe |  | esnel］to se |
|  | ［dur gal］ | to please | MLId | ［indz］me，myself |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

| zu.antusberb | [ $\mathrm{Hak}^{\mathrm{b}}$ usteghen] | CLOTHING |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| qnqung | [gok ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | apron |
| qmunt | [goti] | belt |
|  | [aparanjan] | bracelet |
| ¢шгип¢р | [vartik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | briefs |
|  | [kochak] | button |
| ¢штпนшип | [hak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ust] | clothing, dress |
|  | [verarku] | coat |
| odh.p. | [odzik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | collar |
| Fwir $\mathrm{P}_{\text {\% }}$ | [bambak] | cotton |
|  | [zgest] | dress |
|  | [mushtak] | fur |
| dernimg | [dzeinotss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | glove |
| щшлпьшши | [payusak] | handbag |
| 4thwerl4 | [gəlkhark] | hat |
| ршбцпп | [bachkon] | jacket |
| $44_{\text {cung }}$ | [ $\mathrm{v}^{\text {z }}$ notss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | necklace |
| 4 ¢4шш | [ ${ }^{2}$ zkap] | necktie |
| 4h2triwing | [gisheranotss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | nightgown |
|  | [ ${ }{ }^{\text {rknnakoshhik] }}$ | overshoe |
| чГщшц | [gərpan] | pocket |
| щпшгши | [tabat] | pants |
| ${ }^{\text {WI }}$ | [shal] | scarf |
|  | [(verna)shapik] | shirt |
| $4 \square_{2} h^{4}$ | [koshik] | shoe |
|  | [sḩrjazgest, $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ esh] | skirt, hem |


| «ちぃпшр | ［metak ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{s}$ ］ | silk |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ヶппш｜\％шヶ | ［hoghat ${ }^{\text {ap }}$ ］ | slipper |
| 4пレレщш | ［gulpa］ | sock，stocking |
| ＜пワшपұ大ии | ［loghazgest］ | swimsuit |
| ¢пп4шш | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ oghkap］ |  |
| Smululing | ［hovanots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | umbrella |
|  | ［nerk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nashapik］ | undershirt |
|  | ［andravartik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | underwear |
|  | ［hamazgest］ | uniform |
| PロLI＇t | ［burt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | wool |
| 9．0ヶ3ub！ | ［Guyner］ | COLORS |
| ulu | ［sev］ | black |
| 4шщппјли | ［kapuyt］ | blue |
| 4 $\quad$ Lith\％ | ［gunegh］ | colorful |
| пu4tynuju | ［voskeguyn］ | gold－colored |
| 4шโш上 | ［kanach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | green |
|  | ［mokhraguyn］ | grey |
|  | ［narnjaguyn］ | orange |
|  | ［vart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aguyn］ | pink |
| 4 ¢пиг¢！ | ［karmir］ | red |
| шгдш／дшұпレ」¢ | ［artsat ${ }^{\text {a }}$ aguyn］ | silver－colored |
|  | ［yerknaguyn］ | sky blue，azure |
|  | ［manushakaguyn］ | violet |
|  | ［spitak／chermak］ | white |
|  | ［deghin］ | yellow |
|  | ［bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kanach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | light green |
|  | ［muk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kanach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | dark green |

## V GRAMMAR

## A．VERBS

## 1．The perfect and pluperfect tenses（indicative）


 took place in the past．They are compound tenses formed by combining the auxiliary verb $\iota_{\iota} \mathcal{L}$ ，in the present and imperfect tense respectively，with the past participle（ending either in
 The past participle of the base verb is built as follows：
a）For first－conjugation verbs（ending in $-t_{L}$ ），the infinitive and the past participle coincide：
Infinitive
${ }^{4} r^{2} r_{L}$［sirel］to love $\quad \rightarrow \quad{ }^{2}$

b）Second－conjugation verbs（ending in $-\boldsymbol{m}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ ）and irregular verbs add $-\kappa_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ to the aorist stem：

| Infinitive | Aorist |  | Past Participle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 4шГワшォ－ノ | $\rightarrow$ | 4ш！r\％шg |
| чш！［gal］to come | 44－w | $\rightarrow$ | 64ta |
| $\boldsymbol{n L u n t} \boldsymbol{L}$［utel］to eat | 4ヶ\％$\square^{\text {－}}$ | $\rightarrow$ | $4 L^{2} r^{L}$ ，etc． |

## 2．Formation of the perfect tense（affirmative）

The perfect paradigm consists of the past participle ending in $-t_{L}$ or $-\omega_{g} t_{L}$ and the pres－ ent tense of the auxiliary verb $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{tr}\end{aligned} \mathrm{f}^{\text {．All verbs build their perfect as follows：}}$

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（tur） | inf．or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\boldsymbol{L} L_{L} L_{L}$ Luf | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el em］ |
| 2nd pers．（\％ $\boldsymbol{H}_{\text {L }}$ ） | inf．or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\boldsymbol{L} L_{L} L_{L} L_{L}$ | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {e }} \mathrm{el} \mathrm{es}$ ］ |
| 3rd pers．（\％um） | inf．or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\operatorname{mght}_{L} 5$ | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el e］ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers．（ftLsp） |  | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |
| 2nd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\sim}$ | inf．or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\omega_{L} t_{L} t_{L}$ | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el $\mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ |
|  | inf．or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\boldsymbol{L} L_{L} t_{L}$ | ［－el／－ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el en］ |

[^15]
## Perfect (affirmative)

|  | $4 \square^{15}$ | $\boldsymbol{q}^{\text {Strel }}$ (to place) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (tur) | $4 \Gamma^{\text {L }} \mathrm{L}$ L L |  |  |
| (7пL) | 410til bu | \%ritu bu |  |
| (\%ıu) | $4 \Gamma^{1 / L} 5$ | ${ }_{7} \square^{\text {ribu }} 5$ |  |
|  |  | 7 $r^{1}$ | 4ш!r'mith Lita |
| $\left(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{p}}\right)$ | $4 r^{1 / L} L^{4}$ |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

## 3. Formation of the perfect tense (negative)

The perfect tense forms its negative paradigm by combining the respective negative forms


| $41^{15} L$ |  <br> I have written | $\rightarrow$ LLLS $4 \Gamma^{\text {K }} \mathrm{L}$ <br> $\rightarrow$ I haven't written |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4ш[17\% |  | $\rightarrow$ \&ヶヶf 4wrrwgtı |
|  | I have read | $\rightarrow$ I haven't read |
| $7^{5 / 5} L_{L}$ |  | $\rightarrow$ Ltuf |
|  | I have placed | $\rightarrow$ I haven't placed |

## 4. Formation of the pluperfect tense

Pluperfect consists of the past participle ending in $-t_{L}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ and the imperfect tense of


| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers. (tu) | inf. or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-$ wgt $t_{L} 5 \boldsymbol{5}$ | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el eyi] |
| 2nd pers. (\% $\boldsymbol{\text { пL }}$ ) | inf. or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\omega_{\text {c }}$ | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {h }}$ el eyir] |
| 3rd pers. (\%um) |  | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {e }}$ el er] |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers. (ıftspe) | inf. or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\boldsymbol{m g} t_{L} 5 / 4 L_{L}$ | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el eyink ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |
|  |  | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el eyik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |
|  | inf. or aorist stem $+-t_{L} /-\boldsymbol{\omega}$ | [-el/-ats ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{el}$ eyin] |

## Pluperfect (affirmative)

|  | $4 r^{5} / 2$ | $7_{4}^{515}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (tur) | $4 r^{\text {L }}$ L 51 | 7 $r^{\text {L }}$ L 51 |  |
| (7п\%) | $4 r^{5} \mathrm{~L} 5$ 5r | 7 $\square^{\text {rta }} 5$ | 4 4 |
| (\%ши) | $4 \Gamma^{\text {L }}$ L 51 |  |  |
| (fosipe) |  |  |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \times \boldsymbol{p}$ ) | 7014 5he | 7-1ta 5he | 4шएr\% |
| ( $\Sigma_{1}$ |  |  |  |

## 5. Formation of the pluperfect (negative):

The pluperfect tense forms its negative paradigm by combining the respective negative forms of the auxilary verb $t_{\iota} \delta(5 h \rightarrow \Sigma 5 h)$ with the $-t_{L}$ or $-\boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{L}_{L}$ participle:

| $4 r^{1 / 4}$ | $4 \Gamma^{6}$ 5 5 <br> I had written | $\rightarrow 25 h^{2}+r^{5} L$ <br> $\rightarrow$ I hadn't written |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $r^{\text {ctiter }}$ | 7 $r^{\text {L }}$ L 51 |  |
|  | I had put | $\rightarrow$ I hadn't put |
|  |  |  |
|  | I had read | $\rightarrow$ I hadn't read |

## 6. Uses of the perfect tense

 the present time:

[Dzyunə yekel e u tsatskel amen inchh ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
The snow has fallen and has covered everything. (I am witnessing it.)
 expresses a past action without any reference to duration or progression. Compare the usage of these two tenses in the following sentences:

[Bolor ənkerner ${ }^{2}$ t yekel en $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ez tesnelu]
All of your friends have come to see you. (They are still here.)

[Bolor ənkerner ${ }^{2}$ t yekan $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ez tesnelu]
All your friends came to see you. (No indication whether they are still here.)

There are other differences in meaning between these two past tenses:

 the choice between these two past tenses is made according to the context:



Therefore, words such as just now, yesterday, etc., are more likely to appear with the aorist than with the perfect:

[-K $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ez ov asats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ? -Yerek lasets $\left.{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{i}\right] \quad$ (But not: Yerek em lasel]
Who told you? I heard it yesterday.
c) As opposed to the aorist, past activity expressed by the perfect does not necessarily indicate activity experienced by the speaker, but rather knowledge of an activity:

[-Annan vortegh e? - Inch ${ }^{\boldsymbol{h}}$-vor tegh gənats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
Where is Anna? She went somewhere. (I saw her going.)

[-Ashotn ur e? - D ${ }^{\text {p }}$ prots ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ e gənats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el]
Where is Ashot? He went to school. (I believe.)
d) The Armenian perfect also has a reportative or mediative meaning that plays an impor-

 the speaker as alleged, hearsay, or information not witnessed but rather obtained from a third party:

[Iren ( $\mathrm{ip}^{\mathrm{h}}$ rev $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}$ ) tesel em, bayts $\mathrm{s}^{\boldsymbol{h}} \mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}}$ em barevel]
I have (allegedly) seen him, but have not greeted him.

[L²sets ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ir? Karinen amusnats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ el e]
Have you heard? Karine got married. (So they say.)
e) In certain contexts of colloquial speech, the perfect tense can indicate an action in the future:

[Mek el or $n$ man ban es arel, het ${ }^{\imath t}$ ch $^{\dagger}$ em khosi]
If you ever do (literally: did) something like that, I will not talk to you again.

## 7. Uses of the pluperfect tense

Pluperfect is a past perfect tense that denotes an activity completed prior to another activity in the past. Here are two examples to illustrate the use of pluperfect in Armenian:

## 

[Yerp ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ hasank ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, hamergn art $^{\mathrm{h}}$ en sk${ }^{2}$ svel er]
When we arrived, the concert had already started.

## 

[Ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ agiteyi, vor $n^{2}$ rank $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ts $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ankats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ el eyin gal]
I didn't know that they had wanted to come.
Pluperfect can also indicate an action previous to another action that the speaker has not witnessed but reports on it based on hearsay or on the action's results:

## 

[Marian vaghuts ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ir ənkerneri het cher khosel]
Maria had not spoken to her friends for a long time.

## B. NOUNS

## 1. Declension types

When declined, nouns change their forms in the genitive case first: they either take a genitive case marker or mutate or do both. Therefore, basic declensions are named after changes that nouns undergo in the genitive case, such as the $\boldsymbol{- \boldsymbol { f }}$ declension, $\boldsymbol{- \pi}$, declension, -п! $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ declension, etc. Here are the common declension types:

## - $\boldsymbol{h}$ declension

This is the most productive declension type. Most Armenian common and proper nouns, as well as nominalized (i.e. non-nominals with the definite article $-\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) adjectives, participles, postpositions, numerals, and pronouns are declined by this paradigm:



## -nц declension







## -سis declension







## $-2 / \nu$ declension







## $-\pi \square$ declension




## -n\& declension


 $\rightarrow$ mhlúne, etc.

## -n declension

This is the remnant of an archaic declension type. Very few words take this genitive form:


There are also certain irregular genitive-dative forms that apply to only one word or a few words:



Although certain semantic groups of nouns tend to gravitate towards particular declension types，there are no exhaustive rules．Therefore，the declension of each noun must be learned separately．Note that in contemporary usage many nouns tend to follow the more common－ $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ declension．This occurs particularly in colloquial speech：

| шアJTLE | $\rightarrow$ шгјши | or |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| шโ！пLโ | $\rightarrow$ шкй | or |  |
|  |  | or |  |
| чш⿺𠃊เขип | $\rightarrow$ ұш⿺𠃊ипјшโ | or | чш⿺𠃊เшип |

While the singular forms of the genitive and dative cases manifest a great diversity，this cannot be said about the plural cases which，in fact，are quite uniform．The plural geni－ tive／dative of nouns is formed from the nominative singular with the addition of the plu－





Some nouns preserve the genitive singular mutations or alternation of certain root vowels （see pp．107－108 in this unit）in the plural：


Some nouns deviate from this plural genitive／dative pattern：Nouns with the plural suffix





## 2．The genitive and dative cases

These two cases coincide basically in form，but differ in function．While the genitive is always used without the definite article，the dative appears with or without it．

The genitive case primarily expresses possession．It may also indicate provenance and attribution；as such，it modifies a noun that is either the subject or the complement of a sen－
tence. In Armenian, the genitive is commonly placed before the noun it modifies:

[Yerevani khaghoghə]
the grapes of Yerevan

[mart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{u}$ yeraznerə]
the man's dreams

[nəran guynə]
the color of pomegranate

[urakhuth yan arts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ unk $^{\text {b }}$ nerə]
the tears of joy

[tarva yeghanaknerə]
the seasons of the year

[ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ roch $^{\mathrm{h}}{ }^{\text {a }}{ }^{\mathrm{S}}$ amusinə $]$
my sister's husband
-h declension
-шย declension

Genitive forms of nouns are often synonymous with adjectives derived from nouns:

世пп
[mor serə]
a mother's love

[ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ak ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ avori palatə]
the King's palace

[tan ashkhatank ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
housework

[mayrakan serə]
motherly love

[ ${ }^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{h}}$ avorakan palatə] the royal palace

[tnayin ashkhatank ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
home work, domestic work

The genitive is also required by some prepositions and postpositions:

шгшкй шг
[arants ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ashkhatank ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ i]
without work

[hor²s masin]
about my father

The primary function of the dative case is to indicate the recipient or the beneficiary of an action. It is the case of the indirect object. Many verbs, nouns and adjectives govern the indirect object in the dative case (see Unit 11, p. 262).

While in Armenian a limited number of verbs take only one object in the dative (see p. 262), there is a large group of verbs that govern two objects, one in the dative, the other in the accusative. Verbs of 'giving' (lending, offering, etc.) and 'communicating' (saying, reporting, explaining, writing, etc.) belong to this group. In each of the following sentences, for instance, verbs take both a direct and an indirect object (see p. 263):

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Girk ${ }^{\text {d }}$ S usanoghin ${ }^{\text {² }} \mathrm{vetst}^{\text {d }}$ i] | [Khnt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ irə $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ez}$ bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ atrel em ] |
| I gave my book to the student. | I have explained the problem to you. |

The direct and indirect objects in the sentences above are governed by the verbs $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\Perp}$




The dative case may also be used to express various adverbials, for instance:
a) time

[Mayisin varth erə bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ vum en]
In May, roses open.
b) place

[Na dəranə kangnats e]
He is standing at the door.
c) manner (price, measure, age, etc.)

[Hazar drami gnets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i]
I bought (it) for a hundred drams.
d) purpose

[Chashi gnats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ink}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
We went to dinner.

## 

[Kesgisherin mi dzayn losets ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ i]
At midnight I heard a noise.
 [Kturin mi $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}$ ərich $^{\mathrm{b}}$ un er yerk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{um}$ ]
There was a bird singing on the roof.

[Menk ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ nuyn tarik ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{i}$ enk ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ] We are (people) of the same age.

<br>[Yekank ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ok $^{\text {b }}$ nelu]<br>We came to help.

## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## 1. Impersonal sentences

Unlike English, Armenian has an elaborate set of personal endings for conjugating verbs, rendering personal pronouns redundant. This applies not only to sentences where the person is implied in the context and identified by the personal ending but even more so to sentences that don't have an expressed subject. While impersonal sentences in English start with the empty subject word $i t$, or the impersonal pronoun one, Armenian does not use a pronoun.

1. Impersonal sentences in the 3rd person singular refer to daylight and temperature changes:

[Mət ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ num e / lusanum e / ts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}{ }^{\text {ərtum }} \mathrm{e}$, etc.]
It is getting dark / light / cold, etc.*
 etc.) evaluate various situations and events or pass judgment on them:


It is (im)possible/it is (not) difficult/it is (not) shameful/it is (not) dangerous



One/We must understand / One/We should not wince / One/We must hurry, etc.
2. Impersonal sentences with a verb in the 3rd person singular of the passive voice (see p.
155) have synonymous forms in the 3 rd person plural of the active voice:
 [Asvum e or asum en / handznararvum e or handznararum en, etc.]
It is said or they say / it is recommended or they recommend, etc.
Note that the only contrasting feature in the formation of impersonal sentences between Armenian and English is that Armenian does not use pronouns as the English does (cf. it, they, one, etc.). As for the use of verbal categories, i.e. person, number, tense, mood, and voice, the formation of impersonal sentences in these two languages is mostly similar.
[^16]
## 2. Expressions of personal preference


 please. In their affirmative or negative forms the basic verbs express people's likes and dislikes:
 [sirum em vs. chh ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{em}$ sirum] I love vs. I don't love

## 

 [havanum em vs. chh ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ em havanum] I like vs. I don't likeThe meaning of the Armenian verb urril [sirel] has a broader scope than that of the

 culty to the English-speaking learner of Armenian. It is the very common phrasal verb $\boldsymbol{7} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square}$ [dur gal] to appeal, to please (literally: to come across as appealing or likeable to someone) that needs special attention. Here is how $\boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{L}$ [dur gal] is used:

1. The preferred item is brought into focus by moving it from the object to the subject position. Thus, rather than the construction I like $X$ the reverse construction, $X$ pleases me, is employed:
 [(Yes) havanum em kinon²karə] I like the film.
[Kinon²karə indz dur e galis] The film pleases me.

Thus, the person who likes or dislikes something or someone - marked by X - is being



[ $X$-ə mart ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ kants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, Armenin, mez, bolorin shat dur yekav/ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ekav]
People, Armen, we, everybody liked/disliked X very much.
2. While the conjugated verb $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{m}}$ agrees in person and number with the subject X asserted as being liked or disliked, the possessive markers attached to the nominal component $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ refer to the subject who likes or dislikes something. The latter is carried out by using the pos-


## Singular





## Unit 5

## Plural

| 1st person: |  | [ $X$-ə mez dur yekav] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2nd person: |  | [ $X$-ə dzez dur yekav] |
| 3rd person: |  | [ $X$-ə nərants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ dur yekav] |

 (person) or other pronoun in the dative case (see p. 104 in this unit).

[ $X$-ə Armenin, Annayin, mart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ kants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, bolorin dur yekav]
Armen, Anna, people, everybody liked/disliked X.

a. For the person to whom X does or does not appeal, the dative: $\boldsymbol{n}^{\circ}\llcorner\llcorner\mathbb{f}$ to whom?

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Um dur ch' ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ekav ays filmə?] | [Yeghpors dur ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ekav] |
| Who didn't like this film? | My brother did not like it. |
| (Lit.: To whom did this film not | (It did not appeal to my brother.) |



|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Ov k ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ez dur ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i galis?] | [Inch ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ə $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ ez dur ch ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{i}$ galis?] |
| Who does not please you (informal)? | What does not please you? |

## VII WORD FORMATION

## Vowel alterations and mutations in the same root

In word formation, declension, and in plural formation certain root vowels within words may change or be suppressed on a regular basis. This change is triggered by the shift of stress from the root to the next, usually the last syllable of words. As a result, words with common roots display recurring vowel alterations and mutations that can be isolated and described:

## 1. $\left.\boldsymbol{H}[\mathbf{i}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{Z}^{[จ}\right]^{*}$

 и!



[^17]
## 2. $\boldsymbol{h}[\mathrm{i}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{\square}$ *

## Examples:

 шшшпцшџ!п! [patvavor] honorable



## 3. $\boldsymbol{h}[\mathrm{i}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{m}[\mathrm{L}]$

## ExAMPLES:

шлұя [aygi] garden $\rightarrow$ шјұпь [aygu] garden $_{\text {gen }}$


4. $\boldsymbol{\pi L}[\mathbf{u}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{L}^{\left[{ }^{2}\right]}$ (pronounced but not written)

## Examples





5. $\boldsymbol{\pi}\llcorner[\mathrm{u}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{\emptyset}$ *

Examples:


6. mLJ [uy] $\rightarrow$ mL [u]

## Examples:



 vorel] to poison

## 7. $L[\mathrm{e}] \rightarrow \boldsymbol{h}$ [i]

## Examples:






[^18]
## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The letters $2 \boldsymbol{z}$ and $\boldsymbol{K} \boldsymbol{H}$

$2 \boldsymbol{\eta}$ [gh] and $\boldsymbol{l} \boldsymbol{f} \quad$ [kh] stand for a pair of voiced and voiceless guttural consonants in Armenian that do not exist in the English alphabet. Guttural is the term for sounds that are created in the throat.

The voiced $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ is pronounced like the uvular ' $r$ ' in Parisian French pronunciation; cf ' $r$ ' in rouge - red, or arrière - behind; cf. the Modern Greek ' $\gamma$ ' in $\gamma$ ' $\tau \alpha$ [ghata] cat.
 leader, etc.

The voiceless $\boldsymbol{h} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{u}}$ is pronounced like the German velar fricative x -Laut in acht - eight or Bach.



Armenian words that contain both of these guttural sounds represent certain difficulties for the English-speaking learner. They can be overcome by steady practice.



In some words, $\mathbf{2}_{\boldsymbol{\eta}}^{\boldsymbol{q}}[\mathrm{gh}]$ is pronounced $\boldsymbol{\|} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}[\mathrm{kh}]$, confusing in some cases even the native
 pronounced [akhch ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ik}$ ] and [akh $\left.\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{at}\right]$ respectively.

Note the following spelling and pronunciation rules:

1. Before $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{a}[\mathrm{dz}]$ and $\boldsymbol{\mathcal { Q }} \boldsymbol{\mathfrak { q }}$ [j], the letter $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\eta}[\mathrm{gh}]$, not $\boldsymbol{\boldsymbol { h }} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{u}[\mathrm{kh}]$, is written although the pronunciation is close to $\boldsymbol{h} h_{u}$ [kh]:

|  | pronounced [dekhts ${ }^{\text {¹ }}$ ] |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | pronounced [ $\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{jkhch}^{\text {d }} \mathrm{ik}$ ] |

2. Before $\boldsymbol{\beta} \boldsymbol{\beta}$ the letter $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{q}}[\mathrm{gh}]$, not $\boldsymbol{\|} \boldsymbol{\rho}_{\mu}[\mathrm{kh}]$, is written despite the fact that the pronunciation of $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\eta}$ [gh] is close to $\boldsymbol{h} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ [kh]:




## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## $\boldsymbol{b L}$, $\mathrm{t} \boldsymbol{4}$ or $\boldsymbol{L}$ ?

In modern Eastern Armenian there are two distinct spellings for the sound combinations [yev] and [ev]:
a) the ligature $\boldsymbol{L}$ that exists only in the lower case
b) two letters, $\boldsymbol{t}$ and $\boldsymbol{L}$, appearing as $\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{\psi}$ or $\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$

Unlike the two Armenian letters $\boldsymbol{t}$ and $\mathscr{L}$, the graphic sign $\boldsymbol{L}$ does not belong to the Armenian alphabet due to its ambiguous phonetic value. It is however perceived as a complementation to the alphabet and is widely used to replace the combination $t+\mu$ in East Armenian writing and printing. Here are some orthographic and phonetic rules for the usage of $\boldsymbol{b} \varphi, \boldsymbol{t}_{4}$ or $\boldsymbol{L}$.

1. Occurences of $\boldsymbol{\iota}$ :
a) The ligature $\boldsymbol{L}$ is used to designate an independent word, namely the coordinate conjunction $\boldsymbol{L}$ [yev] with the meaning and.

[yev ayln] et cetera (literally: and other [s])

## 

 [Mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ik yev nrants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mijavayrə]Humans and their environment
b) In medial or final position of words, $\boldsymbol{L}$ stands for $[\mathbf{e v}]$ after consonants:


c) In medial or final position of words $\boldsymbol{\iota}$ stands for $[\mathbf{y e v}]$ after vowels:

d) In initial position of words $\boldsymbol{L}$ occurs only in two instances: $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ [ $\left.\mathrm{yev}^{2} \mathrm{~s}\right]$ also, as well and $\boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\epsilon} / \boldsymbol{\beta}$ [yevet] right away, at once.
2. Occurences of $\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \downarrow, \boldsymbol{L} \varphi \mathbb{L}$
a) In initial position of names of foreign origin, compounds and derivations thereof:
 [həndevropakan] Indo-European, etc.



d) In compound words, when the letters $t+\downarrow$ meet by coincidence:



## X EXERCISES

1. Combine words from each of the columns to create appropriate utterances; translate them.
a. 9.пיףた!
b. Qtif ufrinuf
c. И. Ји Кшұпьшип



g. SҺшшгицииии

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Kn! tis: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { <uustofits: }
\end{aligned}
$$

2. Form mini-dialogues according to the given patterns in 1, 2, 3 and 4. Replace кшчпцши with qı








3. Form mini-dialogues according to the given patterns 1, 2, 3 and 4. Replace the dis-



4. A. म'乡ц




B. цши $\{5$ :


5. Complete the sentences by using the negative forms of the verbs in parentheses.







6. Respond to the questions according to the given pattern.







7. Complete the second statement according to the given pattern.







8. Answer the following questions using the words in parentheses.







9. Complete the sentences following the pattern.








## 9. Complete the interrogative sentences and respond to them.








10. How would you say it in Armenian?
A. Your classmate's opinion is important to you. You ask:

b. How was my answer? (щшипшицшши)
c. I read Armenian well, don't I?
d. He speaks Armenian well, doesn't he?
e. Don't you like my letter?
f. Don't you think that this book is good?
g. Do you like our new teacher?
B. You have guests in your new house. You ask them about their impressions:
a. How do you like our new apartment?
b. our garden?
c. our kitchen?
d. my bedroom?
e. our dining room ?
f. our new furniture?
11. Answer the questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.








## XI PROVERBS


[Marth un mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ shinoghə hak ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ustn e]
Clothes make the man.
 [Hak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ust tur, shnork ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{i}$ gam, hats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ tur, uzhi gam] Dress me to look smart; feed me to be strong.

## 

[Esho $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}$ ambov, mart ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ ə hak ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ustov]
Donkeys (are judged) by their saddles, humans by their clothes.

[Tsalats hak ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ustə ink ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{n}$ iren $\mathrm{k}^{2}$ mashvi]
Folded clothing wears out by itself.
(Message: Clothes are to be used.)

## Unit 6



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Asking about and telling time ..... 116
Vocabulary: Time expressions ..... 120
Grammar: VERBS: 1.The future and the future imperfect ..... 124
2. The imperative mood ..... 126
Nouns: The ablative case ..... 128
Numerals: 1. Ordinal numerals ..... 131
2. Distributive numerals ..... 132
3. Fractional numerals ..... 133
Armenian-English Contrasts: Interrogative sentences ..... 134
Word Formation: Formation of nouns denoting persons ..... 135
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{a}, \boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{\delta}$, and $\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{g}$ ..... 136
Orthography: Armenian syllabification and the transitory [ə] ..... 137

## I DIALOGUES

1. $A$ and $B$ are students taking the same Armenian course. It is before Armenian class.

[Zhamə kbanisn e?]

[Ut ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}$ ants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ kes e]

[Uremn der kes zham unenk ${ }^{\text {h }}$ ]
 [minchb ev hayereni dasə]
 [Ughigh yeresun rope]
 [Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ lav e! Ari miasin]
 [hayereni dasin patrast ${ }^{2}$ venk $^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Yes patrast em]
 [Koghk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ is $n^{\text {a }}$ stir, $u$ indz ok ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nir!]
 [Girk ${ }^{\text {b }} \partial^{\text {bats }}{ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ara u kart ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ a!]

What time is it?

It's half past eight.

That means we still have half an hour
before Armenian class.

Exactly thirty minutes.

That's great! Come, let's prepare
for the Armenian class together.

I'm ready.

Sit next to me and help me!

Open the book and read!
2. At the Yerevan train station. A is getting information from $B$ at the information desk.

When is the train arriving?
[Yerp ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e zhamanelu gnats ${ }^{\mathrm{s}^{\mathrm{b}}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ə?]
B. חruntrifig:

From where?
[Vorteghits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ?]
A. Uuphпийдg:

From Spitak.
[Spitakits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
 [Spitaki gənats ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ n ushanum e]
 [ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ani ropeyits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e aystegh linelu?]
 [Ayn zhamanelu e zhamə tasin]
 [Vortegh karogh em gənel]
 [orva ${ }^{\text {th }}$ ert ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ern u amsagrerə?]
 [Aysteghits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ughigh g ${ }^{2}$ nats $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$,]
 [dzakh koghmum therthi k ${ }^{\text {rpak }} \mathrm{ka}$ ]
 [Shnorakalut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun!]

It will arrive at ten o'clock.

Where can I buy today's

Go straight from here and
there's a newspaper kiosk on the left.

Thank you!
3. In the Armenian class. $A$ is a foreign student, $B$ is the Armenian teacher.

[Mi ban karogh em harts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nel?]
B. hutrortuf:

Sure.
[Khnt ${ }^{\text {th }}$ rem]
 [Inch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e n²shanakum "orats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ uyts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}{ }^{\text {" }}$ ?]

[Orats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uytss ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{n}^{\text {shanakum e "calendar"] }}$
 [Isk inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ en asum computerin?]

[Hamakark ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {ich }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ]

Can you repeat the word
[Karogh ek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ barə $\mathrm{k}^{\text {rknel] }}$
 [yev asel the inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ pes e grrvum]
 [Ayo, sirov. Ayspes e gərvum:]

[H-a-m-a-k-a-r-k ${ }^{b}-1-\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
4. $A$ and $B$ are strangers, meeting in the university hallway.
 [Asats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ kh${ }^{\text {n }}{ }^{\mathrm{t}}{ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ rem, vortegh e gəradaranə?]

[Aysteghits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ thek $^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {vek }}{ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ dzakh]
qufimgh qumas 5: [dimatst ${ }^{\text {b }}$ duin e]

[Sh?norakal em]

[Bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aysor gəradaranə $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{H}}$ ak e]
and it's the door facing you.

## II TEXT

##  [Hayastani aragilə]

 [Hayastanum shat aragilner kan. Aragila ir buyna shhinum e barts ${ }^{\text {r }} \mathrm{r}$ tsareri,




 harav, depi tak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yerk ${ }^{\text {rner }}$. Hay gyughatst ${ }^{\text {b }}$ in giti, vor yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ garunə ga, yev ot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ə


 aragilnera galis en, gətnum irents ${ }^{\text {b }}$ hin buynə yev bazmanum.

7ппи Кшш Dra hamar e, vor haykakan aratgn asum e: Marti innin, aragiln ir bnin.
 Aragilnerə shat ok ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ takar $\mathrm{t}^{\text {b }}$ əchhunner en. Aragilits ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ vakhenum en ots ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ erə yev

$v^{\text {nasatu }}$ myus kent ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aninerə.]

III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

|  | ［aragil］ | stork | 5rıtrr | ［yerkir］ | country |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\chi^{\text {ши }}$ | ［shat］ | much，many | ${ }^{5}$ | ［yerkərner］ | countries |
| 4 ¢ | ［kan］ | there are |  | ［gyughats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i］ | peasant |
|  | ［buyn］ | nest | 4funtiomı | ［gitenal］ | to know |
| $2 h_{\text {bitil }}$ | ［shinel］ | to build |  | ［giti］ | he knows |
| 2¢โınLuf 5 | ［shinum e］ | is building | ${ }_{4}{ }_{\text {LTP }}$ | ［yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | when |
| F＂ural | ［barts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{r}$ ］ | high |  | ［garun］ | spring |
| дши | ［tsari］ | tree | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{H}$ | ［ $\mathrm{ot}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | air |
| นกпL์ | ［tun］ | house | пшршโши | $\mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{b}}$ anal］ | to warm up |
| m¢trith | tneri vra］ | on the houses | опши | otar］ | foreign |
| дшјп | ［zhayri］ | cliff | ${ }_{\text {truniritarrg }}$ | erkərnerit | rom countries |
|  |  |  | 4144is | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {r }}$ \％in］ | again |
|  | mboghj | entire |  | eradarnal］ | to return |
| пшги | ［tari］ | year | 4 | ［gtnel］ | to find |
|  | ［mnal］ | to stay |  | ［ $\mathrm{g}^{\text {tnum }} \mathrm{en}$ ］ | they find |
| 2－¢ | $h^{\text {b }}$ en mn | don＇t sta | herstug | rents ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | their |
|  | ［vakhenal］ | to fear | Spis | in］ | old |
|  | ［vakhena | they fear |  | azmana | to breed |
| gпипй | ${ }^{\text {b }}$ urt］ | cold |  | dəra hamar］ | erefore |
| grinty | ［ts ${ }^{\text {brartits }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | from the cold | шпшб | arats］ | proverb |
| ${ }_{4} \square^{\prime \prime}$ | ［yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | when | шutL | asel］ | to say |
| duter | ［dzºmer］ | winter |  | ar | March |
| ¢ $\boldsymbol{U}^{\text {L }}$ | ［gal］ | to arrive |  | marti innin］ | on March 9 |
|  | galis e］ | is comin |  | b ${ }^{\text {nin }}$ ］ | in its nest |
| Stramium， | ［heranal］ | to go away |  | $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ takar］ | useful |
| ＜Lrmulnuf | ［heranum | they go away |  | ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{r}_{\text {che }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ un］ | bird |
| 24th | $h^{\text {b }}$ | to fly |  | $\mathrm{ts}^{4}$ | snake |
| 24\％Luf Li¢ | ${ }^{\text {}} \mathrm{v}$ um | they fly over | odtrer | ［ots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ erə］ | the snakes |
| 7 | ［depi］ | towards，to | ヶைフロレи | myus］ | other |
| ऽшгш近 | ［harav］ | south | 4 ¢¢шшшиกา | ${ }^{\text {nasatu］}}$ | harmful |
| ипш | ［ tak $^{\text {b }}$ ］ | warm | 4LErwwir | ［kent ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ani］ | animal |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

| a）du．U חh ou．UU．UU．4 | ［Zham u zhamanak］ | TIME EXPRESSIONS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| бши | ［zham］ | hour |
| ［ппй | ［rope］ | minute |
|  | ［vayrkyan］ | second |
|  | ［kes zham］ | half an hour |
| ршппп！${ }^{\text {¢ши }}$ | ［karort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ zham］ | a quarter of an hour |
| $\bigcirc$ | ［or］ | day |
| шпшц゙пи | ［aravot］ | morning |
| 4tuor | ［kesor］ | noon |
| 4tworty Stun | ［kesorits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ heto］ | afternoon |
| 4ratr | ［yereko］ | evening |
|  | ［gisher］ | night |
| 4tur 4 ／2tror | ［kes gisher］ | midnight |
| マш上шな＊ | ［shap $\mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{t}}$ ］ | 1．week；2．Saturday |
| ш上＇tи | ［amis］ | month |
| ипш！ | ［tari］ | year |
| ппшиโишケјш4 | ［tasnamyak］ | decade |
| $7{ }^{7}$ | ［dar］ | century |
|  | ［hazaramyak］ | millennium |
| b）¢U， | ［Shap ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{at}^{\text {b }}$ va orerə ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | THE WEEK DAYS |
|  | ［yerkushap ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{i}$ ］ | Monday |
|  | ［yerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ shap $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{i}$ ］ | Tuesday |
|  | ［ ch $^{\text {b }}$ orek $^{\text {b }}$ shap $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{t}^{\text {b }}$ i］ | Wednesday |
|  | ［hingshap ${ }^{\text {d }} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{i}$ ］ | Thursday |
| пレггшア | ［ $\operatorname{rrp}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{h}}$ ］ | Friday |
| 2шрш／み | ［shap ${ }^{\text {d }} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | Saturday |
| 4ヶrum | ［kiraki］ | Sunday |
| c）UUFUGb「¢ | ［Amisnerə］ | THE MONTHS |
| SmLuelw | ［hunvar］ | January |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{et}^{\text {rvar }}$ ］ | February |
| «шш！ | ［mart］ | March |
| шщгケц | ［april］ | April |
| «ึш」ии | ［mayis］ | May |
| SmLither | ［hunis］ | June |

[^19]| SmLitur | ［hulis］Juty | July |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| очпบиกบ | ［ogostos］Augus | August |
|  | ［september］Sep | September |
| ¢n¢untuptror | ［hoktember］Oct | October |
| Emjouferir | ［noyember］Nov | November |
| 7t丩untufftr | ［dektember］Dec | December |
|  | ［Tarva yeghanaknerə］THE | THE SEASONS OF THE YEAR |
| 4ш！ா⿺𠃊 | ［garun］spring | spring |
| шケ์шก | ［amari］sum | summer |
| แてпレ¢ | ［ashun］fall | fall |
| duftr | ［dzåmer］wint | winter |
| e）dU．UU．UU．YF UU．YRU．3¢br¢［Zhamanaki makbayner］ADVERBS OF TIME |  |  |
| Shıfи | ［hima］ | now |
| Sturn | ［heto］ | after，then |
| шпш！ | ［arach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | before |
| ヶ512世 | ［misht］ | always |
|  | ［sharunak］ | continuously |
| $L_{\text {Prererer }}$ | ［yerp ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ek}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | never |
| ${ }_{\text {crentifu }}$ | ［yerp ${ }^{\text {em}}{ }^{\text {® }} \mathrm{n}$ ］ | sometimes |
|  | ［hachakh］ | often |
| шјшоワ | ［aysor］ | today |
| 岗ぞ | ［vaghə］ | tomorrow |
| $5_{5} 5^{5} 4$ | ［yerek］ | yesterday |
|  | ［（yerek chibe）myus orə］ | the day before yesterday |
|  | ［vaghə che e myus orə］ | the day after tomorrow |
|  | ［ays aravot／gisher］ | this morning，tonight |
|  | ［yerek／ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yal gisher］ | last night |
|  | ［ays shap ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {b }} /$ amis／tari］ | this week／month／year |
|  | ［hajort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ shap $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{at}^{\text {b }} / \mathrm{amis} /$ tari $]$ | next week／month／year |
|  | ［ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yal shap $^{\text {b }}$ at ${ }^{\text {b }}$／amis／ta | last week／month／year |
| $4 \downarrow^{2}$ | ［verchb ${ }^{\text {er }}{ }^{\text {² }}$ ］${ }^{\text {d }}$ | lately，recently |
| 2пレนாா｜ | ［shutov］ | soon，shortly |
| 岏ワ | ［vagh］ | early |
|  | ［vaghuts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | since long |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {rkin，}}$ norits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | again |
| шјบпレStunle | ［aysuhetev］ | henceforth |
|  | ［aysorvanits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | starting today |
|  | ［vaghvanits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | starting tomorrow |

## おUUU3חh33L [Zhamats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyts $^{\text {b }}$ ə] THE CLOCK


 [Zhamə mekn e (yerkusn e, ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ orsn e, ..., tasnerkusn e] It's one (two, four, ..., twelve).
 [Zhamə mek ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kes e (yerkusn ants ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ kes e, ..., inn ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kes e] It's half past one (half past two, ..., half past nine).
 [Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, yerek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}$, chbl${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ orsn $\ldots$, inn) ants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ arort e ] It's a quarter past one (two, ..., nine).

 [Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, yerek ${ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{n}, \ldots, \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{n}$ ) ants ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ hing e] It's five (minutes) past one (two, three, ..., nine).

 [Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, yerek ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{n}, \ldots, \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}$ ) ants ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ san e] It's twenty (minutes) past one (two, three, ..., eight).

 [Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$, yerek $^{\mathbf{b}}$ itss $^{\mathbf{b}} \ldots$, tasits $^{\mathbf{b}}$ ) $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ arort e pakas] It's a quarter to one (two, three, ..., ten).

 [Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\text {b }}, \ldots$, tasn $^{\text {²mekits }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ) hing e pakas] It's five (minutes) to one (two, ..., eleven).

 [Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\text {b }}, \ldots$, tasnerkusits ${ }^{\boldsymbol{b}}$ ) $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ san e pakas] It's twenty (minutes) to one (two, ..., twelve).


[^20]
a. ( ( [Zhamə mekin (yerkusin, chb orsin, ..., tasnerkusin]
At one (two, four, ... twelve) o'clock.

 [Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, hingn, ..., inn) ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kesin] At half past one (two, five, ..., nine).

 [Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, ..., inn) ants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ arort ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ in] At quarter past one (two, ..., nine).


[Zhamə mekn (yerkusn, yerek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}, \ldots, \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{n}$ ) ants ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ hingin] At five (minutes) past one (two, three, ..., eight).


[Zhamə mekn ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ (yerkusn, ..., yerek ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{n}$, tasn) ants ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ sanin] At twenty (minutes) past one (two, three, ..., ten).


[Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\text {b }}, \ldots$, tasits $\left.^{\boldsymbol{b}}\right) \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ arort $^{\mathrm{b}}$ pakas] At quarter to one (two, ..., ten).

 [Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}, \ldots$, innits ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ ) hing pakas] At five to one (two, ..., nine).

 [Zhamə mekits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ (yerkusits ${ }^{\text {b }}, \ldots$, innits $\left.s^{\text {b }}\right) \mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ san pakas] At twenty to one (two, ..., nine).


[^21]
## V GRAMMAR

## A．VERBS

## I．The future and future imperfect tenses（indicative）

To express future activities and events Armenian has two future tenses in the indicative mood：future and future imperfect．Both are compound tenses．

## 1．Formation of the future tense：





For the future tense，all regular verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（尘） <br> 2nd pers．（7nレ） <br> 3rd pers．（£ш） |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [verb stem+-elu/-alu + em] } \\ & {[\text { verb stem+-elu/-alu }+ \text { es }]} \\ & {[\text { verb stem+-elu/-alu }+ \text { e }]} \end{aligned}$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
|  <br> 2nd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{\perp})$ <br>  |  <br>  <br>  | $\begin{aligned} & {\left[\text { verb stem+-elu/-alu }+ \text { enk }^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {\left[\text { verb stem+-elu/-alu }+\mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {[\text { verb stem+-elu/-alu }+\mathrm{en}]} \end{aligned}$ |

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## FUTURE

|  | $41^{15}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| （tut） |  |  |  |  |
| （7пL） |  |  | 4шГワш！пレ Ки |  |
| （\％шш） | $4 \Gamma^{5} \square^{\square}<5$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| （ $L_{1}$ |  |  | 4шГワш！пь เ¢ |  |

## 2．Formation of the future imperfect tense：

The future imperfect tense is formed by combining the future participle ending in $-_{L_{L}} L_{L}$

 5h［kart ${ }^{\text {alu eyi］I was going to read，etc．All regular verbs follow the pattern below：}}$
$\left.\begin{array}{|lll|}\hline & \text { SINGULAR }\end{array}\right]$

## The future imperfect

|  | $4 r^{4} L$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| （tu） | $4 \Gamma^{5} L^{\prime \prime}$ | 25t $4 r^{5} L^{\prime \prime \prime}$ |  |  |
| （qロレ） | $4 r^{5}$ |  |  |  |
| （\％，w） | $4 \square^{15} L^{\prime \prime}$ | $25 \square 7 \square^{15} L^{\prime \prime}$ |  |  |
| （fltup） | $4 r^{\text {L }}$ |  |  |  |
| （qпレ¢） |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | $25654 r^{5} L^{\prime \prime}$ |  | 25／ヶ4 4шГワш！ |

## 3．Uses of the future tense

a）The future tense denotes actions or states that the speaker expects to take place in the future：

Tonight we will have dinner together．

They say it will snow．
b）In particular contexts，the future may also connote determination，compulsion，threat， or promise on the part of the speaker．
 I＇ll remember this day．
c）In most cases，it is linked to a condition expressed by a subordinate clause：

If you don＇t come，I＇ll be sad．
The conditional clause may also be implied：
S／urltinl $\boldsymbol{\text { Lus：}}$
I＇ll be sad．
d）The future may be used to express an exhortation：

You＇ll do what I tell you to do．
Note that the auxiliary verb is not repeated when the clause contains more than one verb：

We＇ll sing，dance，and have fun．

## 4．Uses of the imperfect future tense

It denotes actions or states that were anticipated in the past but did not take place：

## 

I was going to write the letter，but then I changed my mind．

I was about to enter the room when the door closed．

## II．The imperative mood

The imperative serves to designate commands，requests，demands，offers，and entreaties． In Armenian these can be rendered assertively or prohibitively．

1）Assertive commands are mainly expressed by the imperative mood，which has two sec－ ond－person forms in Armenian：singular and plural．

## 1．Imperative Singular：

a）Regular verbs form their singular imperative forms by replacing the infinitive endings $-t_{L}$ with $-l_{r}^{\prime} r^{\prime}$ ，and $-\boldsymbol{m}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ with $-\boldsymbol{\mu}^{\prime}$ ．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 4шгクーш } \rightarrow \text { ムшгワール' }
\end{aligned}
$$

 to the aorist stem the ending $-h_{i}^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}$ ．

| Infinitive |  | Aorist |  | Sing．Imperative |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Strr－wโu－w | $\rightarrow$ | Strumg－w | $\rightarrow$ | Strrwg－lir |
| バпルートイッーツ！ | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | ıfnentrg－fir |
|  | $\rightarrow$ | 188 －u | $\rightarrow$ | $18-r^{\prime}$ |
|  | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ | 穴ш／u－倍 |

c）Verbs with the causative suffix－gs－add to the aorist stem the ending $-n^{\prime}$ ．
d）Prohibitive commands are initiated by the prohibitive particle $s^{\prime} f^{\prime}$ don＇t．Most regular verbs derive their prohibitive singular from their assertive forms：
 to the infinitive stem the ending $-\boldsymbol{\omega}$ or $-\boldsymbol{h}$ ．

## 2．Imperative Plural

a）Regular verbs are derived from the aorist stem and take the ending $-t^{\prime}{ }_{p}^{\prime}$ ：

| $t_{[74} t_{L}$ | $\rightarrow$ | tr7ty－ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢ишŋ－ш！ | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $\rightarrow$ |  | $\rightarrow$ |  |

b）Irregular verbs normally use the aorist stem for both singular and plural imperatives：

|  | $\rightarrow$ | $\stackrel{\text { ¢\％}}{ }$ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| neunt ${ }_{\text {L }}$ | $\rightarrow$ | 4切\％ | $\rightarrow$ |  |
|  | $\rightarrow$ | ［mgh | $\rightarrow$ |  |

c）The plural prohibitive uses the infinitive stem by replacing the infinitive endings $-\boldsymbol{t}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$


[^22]
## B. NOUNS

## 1. Formation of the ablative

The Armenian ablative has no equivalent case in English. Whereas English expresses ablative meaning by such prepositions as from, of, etc., Armenian achieves the same effect by adding the ablative marker to nouns and pronouns. The most common markers for the ablative in Armenian are $-\boldsymbol{l g}$ and $-\boldsymbol{- m L g}$, which are normally added to the nominative form.



There are, however, some words that form their ablative based on the genitive case: $\boldsymbol{\kappa}_{\boldsymbol{w}_{J I}}$


When the genitive case ends in $-ш$, there is an $-\xi_{-}$included between the genitive form and the ablative ending - -1 :


Some nouns also preserve the genitive singular mutations or alterations of certain root vowels (see pp. 107-108) in the plural:

| Nom. sing. 4tref book | $\rightarrow$ gen. sing.: qreft $^{\text {a }}$ | $\rightarrow$ gen./dat. plur.: 4 r'eht |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| om. sing. «ппип lie | $\rightarrow$ gen. sing.: ürt | $\rightarrow$ gen./dat. plur.: unrtg |
| m. sing. | $\rightarrow$ gen. sing.: <шг $^{\text {¢ }}$ / | $\rightarrow$ gen./dat. plur.: ¢шı $^{\text {L }}$ / |

The diversity of noun stems in the singular is not preserved in the plural. The ablative plural is based on the nominative plural and is formed mostly by simply adding the ablative marker - $t g$ to the plural ending - $\left(\Sigma_{\ell}\right) t_{\Gamma}$ :



 $-f L_{4}$, or $-w_{J \boldsymbol{p}}$ (see Unit 2, p. 33). The ablative of these nouns is based on the genitive/dative plural ending in $-g$ :

| Nom. sing. $9^{1 / 2}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\rightarrow$ abl. plur.: iftriniegty |
|  | $\rightarrow$ gen. plur.: 4 ¢¢ıwing | $\rightarrow$ abl./ plur.: 4wiumightg |
|  |  |  |

## 2. Uses of the ablative case

The ablative is used

1. When governed by a verb or an adjective (see Unit 11, p. 264):

## 

[Ays shnits ${ }^{\text {¹ }}$ vakhenum em]
I am afraid of this dog.
 be afraid. Note that the English to be afraid is followed by the preposition of (this dog).

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { U.zphg Strinz, ifunftg Stinnz: } \\
& \text { [Ach }{ }^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \text { its }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { heriu, mtk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { its }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { heru] } \\
& \text { Out of sight, out of mind. }
\end{aligned}
$$

This proverb contains two ablative forms, w̌\&fg [ach ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ its ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ] [lit.: from the eye] and

2. To describe various circumstantial details such as source, origin, removal, or distance. It can indicate, for instance, the starting point of an event or an action.
a) The person who carried out an action:

[Ays $n^{2}$ vern stats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el em morits ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {s }}$ ]
I received this gift from my mother.
The form $\boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{f g} \boldsymbol{u}$ from my mother is an ablative. It indirectly indicates the performer of the action, namely the person who bestowed the gift. The question here is: $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{f}^{\circ} \boldsymbol{g}$ [umits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ?] from whom? or by whom?
b) The place where an action begins:

## 

[Vorteghits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ es galis? Shukayits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
Where do you come from? From the market.
 from where? $\boldsymbol{G} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{4} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\jmath} \boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{y}$ from the market.
c) The person, the place or the material from which people or things originate:

[Yerkus ${ }^{\text {a }}$ el nuyn horits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ enk $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
We both have the same father.

## 

 [Shenk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ə karuts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ets $^{\mathrm{b}}$ in $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ arits $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ] They built the house from stone. [inch ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ its $^{\mathbf{b}}$ ?]) indicate the origin of the subjects in question.
d) The time as a starting point of an action or event:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [Mek shap ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{at}^{\text {d }}$ its $\mathrm{S}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{2} \mathrm{gam}$ ] | [Ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yal tarvanits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aystegh enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |
| I will come in a week. | We have been here since last year. |

Here, the questions

e) The cause of an action or state:

[Ts ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {rtits }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ doghum em]
I am shivering with cold.

## 

[Sovits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ shaterə mahats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an]
Many died of starvation.
3. The ablative expresses partitive meaning by indicating a whole from which a part (a piece, a number, etc.) is separated:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| [ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathbf{b}}$ uyrerits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mekə sa e] | [Ays hats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ its ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mi ktor ker] |
| This is one of the sisters. | Eat a piece of this bread! |

4. The ablative is used in comparisons:

[Voskin artsat ${ }^{\text {b }}$ its $^{\text {b }}$ (aveli) $t^{\mathrm{b}}$ ank e] [Yes k ezanits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arag em vazum].
Gold is more expensive than silver. I run faster than you do.
5. The ablative is employed in passive constructions when the original subject is removed from its position and shifted to an indirect object. Compare the following sentence, in which the actual subject has been shifted from the nominative to the ablative form of the noun wrll


[Khote khandz $z^{\mathrm{b}}$ vets $^{\mathbf{b}}$ arevits $^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
The grass was scorched by the sun.

[ $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{b}}$ əşhnamin hakht ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{vets}^{\text {b }}$ mer koghmits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
The enemy was conquered by us.
6. In addition to nouns and pronouns, words of other word classes (adverbs, postpositions, numerals, etc.) may be nominalized and used in the ablative case:

шјшини [aystegh] here $\quad \rightarrow$ шјшинй



## C．NUMERALS

## 1．Ordinal numerals

Ordinal numerals denote the relative position of things，persons，and phenomena in a sequence，row，class，line，etc．In Armenian，ordinal numerals are derived from cardinal


## ORDINAL NUMERALS

## CARDINAL NUMERALS

The first four numbers are exceptions to the rule：

| 1 ¢54 | ［mek］ | $\rightarrow$ | шпшข发 | ［ arach $^{\text {b }}$ in］first |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 trıum | ［yerku］ | $\rightarrow$ |  | ［yerkrort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］second |
| 3 tritep | ［yerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | $\rightarrow$ |  | ［yerrort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］third |
| 4 亿ппй | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ors}$ ］ | $\rightarrow$ | どアアワワワ | ［ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ orrort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］fourth |

Below are regularly formed ordinal numerals：

| 5 spisut | ［hing］$\rightarrow$ | S／4uttrintr | ［hingerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］fifth |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 64 Lhg | ［vets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | 4thtrinlr | ［vetss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ erort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］sixth |
| 7 лп゙み | ［ yot $^{\text {b }}$ ］ |  | ［yot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ erort $^{\text {b }}$ ］seventh |
| 8 пцノ | ［ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ |  | ［ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ erort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］eighth |
| 9 hisce or hise | ［inn］or［inə］$\rightarrow$ | bisctipmit | ［innerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ninth |
| 10 ппшиця or ппшуг | ［tas ${ }^{2}$ n］or［tasə］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［tasnerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］tenth |
| 11 แшนโน์ヒ4 | ［tasnmek］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［tasnmekerortb］11th |
|  | ［tasnerku］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［tasnerkuerort ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ 12 th |
|  | ［tasnerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［tasnerek ${ }^{\text {b }}$ erort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］13th |
|  | ［tasnhing］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［tasnhingerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］15th |
| 20 ¢ишธ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{san}$ ］ |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ sanerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］20th |
|  | ［ksanmek $\rightarrow$ |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ sanmekerort $\left.{ }^{\mathrm{t}}\right] 21 s t^{*}$ |
| 30 trıtumLit | ［yeresun］ |  | ［yeresunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］30th |
| 40 ршпшипьโ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ arasun］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［karasunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］40th |
| 50 ¢рипици | ［hisun］ |  | ［hisunerort ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ］50th |
|  | ［vatsun］ |  | ［vat ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］60th |
| 70 лпฎшโишипцะ | ［yot ${ }^{\text {a }}$ anasun］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［yot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anasunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］70th |
| 80 пиฎиппц์ | ［utsun］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［ut ${ }^{\text {th }}$ sunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］80th |
|  | ［utsunhing］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［ $\mathrm{ut}^{\text {t }}$ sunəhingerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］85th |
|  | ［innsun］$\rightarrow$ |  | ［innsunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］90th |

[^23]
 in a row，etc．）is derived from the question $\boldsymbol{p}^{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \boldsymbol{L} / \mathrm{f}^{\circ}$ how many？

Armenian uses cardinal，not ordinal，numerals to indicate days of the month．For this pur－ pose，cardinal numbers are nominalized（by adding the definite article $-\Gamma$ to the stem）and appear after the genitive form of the noun denoting the month：

［May gen one $_{\text {the }}$ ］（literally：The one of May）

［January ${ }_{\text {gen }}$ six $_{\text {the }}$ ］（literally：The six of January）
Nominalized cardinal numerals are declined like regular－ $\boldsymbol{\iota}$ declension nouns（see p．100）：
U．urflıh turtephs On the third of April
［April ${ }_{\text {gen }}$ three $_{\text {dat }}$ ］（literally：On the three of April）
Uwjlult sfthfy Stunn After the first of May
［May ${ }_{\text {gen }}$ one $_{\text {abl }}$ after］（literally：After the one of May）

## 2．Distributive numerals

Distributive numerals indicate numeric distribution or assignment of items．To this end
a）the suffix－шццш亡 is added to the cardinal numerals：

| 154 | 1 | $\rightarrow$ |  | ［mekakan］one to each |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| trıine | 2 | $\rightarrow$ |  | ［yerkuakan］two to each |
| ппบг | 10 | $\rightarrow$ | ппшиш㐫 | ［tasakan］ten to each |
| ршшия | 20 | $\rightarrow$ | ршшโшициை | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}}$ sanakan］twenty to each |
|  | 100 | $\rightarrow$ |  | ［haryurakan］a hundred to each，etc． |


b）cardinal numerals are reduplicated：

| $\mathrm{SHH}_{4}$ | 1 | $\rightarrow$ | なtu－sftu［mek－mek］one tolof each |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| －rım | 2 | $\rightarrow$ |  |





[ $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ aniakan dolar stats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ? $\quad-\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ sanakan.]
"How many dollars did each of you receive?" "Twenty (each)."

[Yerku-yerku shark ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kangnets $^{\text {b }}$ ink $^{\text {b }}$ ]
We lined up in pairs.

## 3. Fractional numerals

Fractional numerals denote a fraction or fractions of a unit in terms of numerals. The numerator is indicated by a cardinal numeral while the denominator by an ordinal one (end-


## EXAMPLES DENOMINATORS:










There are three exceptions:




## EXAMPLES OF FRACTIONAL NUMERALS:



[yerek ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ hingerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ akan]


 [tasnerku $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{h}}$ sanerort $^{\mathbf{h}}$ akan]

Sometimes the syllable $-t_{\Gamma}$, in the fractional numbers is reduced:


## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Interrogative sentences in Armenian

Like other languages, Armenian has two types of interrogative sentences:
a) specific questions seeking new, supplementary information;
b) general questions that require a yes or no-answer.

1) While English employs mostly $w h$-words for specific questions, Armenian uses inter-



クi゙
However, word order in interrogative sentences is not as rigid as it is in English, where whwords normally appear at the beginning of an interrogative sentence. In Armenian, interrogative words can appear in any position:

|  | [Literally: *The last word again who had?] |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | [Literally: *The last word who again had?] |
|  | [Literally: *Again who had the last word?] |
|  | [Literally: *Again the last word who had?] |

2) The structure of general yes/no-questions in Armenian also differs from that of English. For example, Armenian does not initiate general questions with an auxiliary verb, as is the case in English (by using "to do"):
(7.пи) In accordance with the prevalent (SOV-Subject-Object-Verb) word order in Armenian, general questions rarely start with a finite verb. In fact, the word order of general questions and regular statements can be identical, the only difference being the intonation and punctuation. Compare the word order of the statement below:

However, if the verb itself carries the question mark, it can shift positions:

Since any independent word in a sentence can carry the question mark (see Unit 1, p. 18), we have also the following options:


[^24]
## VII WORD FORMATION

## Formation of nouns denoting persons

The most productive suffixes for forming nouns denoting persons are:


```
-(ш) цчшк [-(a)pan]
\(-\pi r^{\prime \prime} \boldsymbol{H}\) [-ort \({ }^{\mathrm{b}}\) ]
\(-1 \%\) [-ich \({ }^{b}\) ]
-пшธ [-ban]
```

 from common and proper nouns of place:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| цшธи [Van] Van | $\rightarrow 4 \psi^{\text {Lthtg }}$ [vanets ${ }^{\text {b }}$ i] originating from Van |
|  |  |

2. Nouns ending in -(ш)

|  | $\rightarrow$ чп¢шшшโ [dəinapan] porter |
| :---: | :---: |
| щшアипи [partez] garden | $\rightarrow$ щшги斤ццшк [partizpan] gardner |
|  | $\rightarrow$ Чшпшшшธ [karapan] coachman |

3. The suffix -fs [-ich ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ] added to verbal stems form nouns denoting professions:

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| ¢ulitu [hskel] to control | $\rightarrow$ ¢ulft [ ${ }^{2}$ skich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] con |

4. The suffix -nrr [-ort] comes with verbal and nominal stems and indicates occupations:


While most of these derivations do not specify gender, some form parallel nouns extended by the suffix $-\pi\llcorner\leqslant \boldsymbol{L}$ [-uhi], which designates female gender:



German (female

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The letters $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\alpha}$, $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{\delta}$, and $\boldsymbol{8} \boldsymbol{g}$

Similarly to all East Armenian stops discussed so far (see Unit 2, p. 37, Unit 3, p. 59, Unit 4, p. 83), the East Armenian affricates* are also represented by a triple system. $\boldsymbol{2} \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{\sigma} \boldsymbol{\delta}$ and $\mathbf{3} \mathrm{g}$ are a set of affricates that correspond to the following three distinct sounds:

| voiced | $2 \boldsymbol{a}$ | $[\mathrm{dz}]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| voiceless non-aspirated | $\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{\delta}$ | $[\mathrm{ts}]$ |
| voiceless aspirated | $\mathbf{8} g$ | $\left[\mathrm{ts}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ |

The meaning of the following words differs in the contrast of the affricates $\boldsymbol{\alpha}, \delta$ and $\boldsymbol{g}$ :

```
वшшц [dzakh] left
дшии( \(t_{l}\) ) [țakh(el)] (to) sell
gwlu [tss \({ }^{\mathrm{s}}\) akh] twig
```

1) $\mathcal{2} \boldsymbol{a}$ stands for the voiced affricate [dz], a composite sound that starts with the voiced stop [d] and ends with the voiced sibilant [z]. It sounds like the combination of [d+z] in the English odds or kids.

2) $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \boldsymbol{\delta}$ represents the voiceless non-aspirated affricate [ts], a complex sound that starts with the voiceless non-aspirated stop [t] and ends with the voiceless sibilant [s]. It is pronounced similarly to the English combination $[\mathrm{t}+\mathrm{s}]$ without any aspiration.

3) $\boldsymbol{3} g$ represents the voiceless aspirated affricate [ts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ], a complex sound that starts with the voiceless aspirated stop $\left[\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}\right]$ and ends with the voiceless sibilant [s]. It is pronounced similarly to the English combination [ $\mathrm{t}+\mathrm{s}$ ] in lots or cats.




[^25]
## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## Armenian syllabification and the transitory vowel [ ${ }^{2}$ ]

In general, Armenian words form as many syllables as the number of vowels they contain:
one syllable
two syllables
three syllables
four syllabes
five syllables

щшши [pat] wall
пトunfis [retin] eraser




However, this rule does not hold for all Armenian words. Certain words can have

 and 4,4 and $I$ )

As seen above, additional syllables are formed due to the transitory vowel [ ${ }^{2}$ ], which is not written but clearly pronounced between consonants. There are some rules governing this syllabification. For instance, [ ${ }^{\circ}$ ] is pronounced but not written

1) between two consonants in initial position of words:
 шишг [ $\mathrm{t}{ }^{2} \mathrm{kar}$ ] weak, и/шшц [ $\mathrm{s}^{2} \mathrm{khal}$ ] mistake, etc.
2) before $\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{q}$, and $\boldsymbol{z}_{2}$ in initial position of words when followed by the plosive consonants $\boldsymbol{f}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{4}, \boldsymbol{4}$, $\boldsymbol{\mu}$, and $\boldsymbol{\neq}$ (see Unit 10, pp. 240):

3) when the negative particle $\varepsilon^{-}$[ch $\left.\mathrm{ch}^{\boldsymbol{h}}-\right]$ is prefixed to verbs:
 know from qhentis [gitem] I know, etc.
4) when $4^{-}[k-]$ and $4^{-}[k-]$ is prefixed to verbs:


5) when the possessive articles $\boldsymbol{- \boldsymbol { \mu }}[-\mathrm{s}],-\boldsymbol{\tau}[-\mathrm{t}]$, and $-\Sigma[-\mathrm{n}]$ are suffixed to nouns:



6 ) in the final, unstressed syllable of some words:


## X EXERCISES

1．Combine appropriate strings of sentences from each of the two columns．








Дшцп

9ш！



bГトムплшк：

2．Form mini－dialogues according to the pattern in $a, b$ ，$c$ ，and d．Replace the words





c．ク\＆



3．Form mini－dialogues according to the given pattern in a，b，c，d，and e．Replace шјшор，




П＇e，trity duifusteg：




4. Answer the questions, using the data in parentheses.




 1922, 1993, 2005, 2007, etc.)


5. Complete the sentences according to the pattern.







6. Respond to the questions using the items in parentheses. Follow the pattern.







7. Form interrogative sentences according to the pattern.









8. Ask for information on the whereabouts of persons and items:
a. a relative
b. a book
c. a special food
d. a piece of clothing
e. a country

## 9. Translate into Armenian.

a. There are 12 months and four seasons in a year.
b. The seasons are: spring, summer, fall, and winter.
c. Each season has three months. January is the first month, February is the second month, March is the third month, etc., and December is the last month of the year.
d. There are thirty or thirty-one days in a month.
e. Only February has 28 or 29 days.
f. There are 24 hours in a day and 60 minutes in an hour.
g. How many weeks are there in a year? Fifty-two.
h. How many days are there in a week? Name the days of the week!
10. Derive verbs from the adjectives given in parentheses.







11. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.


c. U






## XI PROVERBS

## 

[Amarva pushəə, dzmeriva nushə ${ }^{\circ}$
The summer's thorn (is) the winter's almond.

[Tarva chb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ors yeghanaknerə dəratsi en, mekə myusin hakarak]
The four seasons of the year are neighbors, all at odds with one another.

[Amariva andzrevin, dzºmerva arevin mi havata]
Do not rely on summer rain, nor on winter sun.

[Tari ka or e pahum, or ka tari]
Some years feed for a day, some days feed for a year.

[Marti innin, aragilə ir bənin]
On the ninth of March, the stork is back in its nest.
(Folk belief on the arrival of spring)

## Unit 7



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Discussing health and well-being ..... 144
Vocabulary: Body parts ..... 148
Grammar: Verbs: 1. The subjunctive mood ..... 150
2. The passive voice ..... 154
Nouns: The instrumental case ..... 156
Armenian-English Contrasts: Prepositions and postpositions ..... 158
Word Formation: Derivation of verbs ..... 160
Pronunciation: The letters $\boldsymbol{\mathscr { Q }} \boldsymbol{\ell}, \boldsymbol{z} \in$, and $\boldsymbol{g}$ \& ..... 163
Orthography: $\boldsymbol{n} \pi$ or $\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{r}^{\text {? }}$ ? ..... 164

## I DIALOGUES

1. A and B are friends; they meet at work.

[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e patahel?]


[Ayo, lav chbem]

[Vat es ${ }^{2}$ zgum?]
Yes, I'm not well. I don't know what it is.
[Gunat es. Hivand tesk ${ }^{b}$ unes]
What happened?
B. 9.gпцןии 5 gшццпцน:
[Gºlukhs e ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ avum]

Have you got a fever?
[Jermut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun unes?]

[Ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ gitem, guts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e mi k ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ich}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]

Do you have a cough?
[Hazum es?]

A bad one.
[Shat uzhegh]

Did you see a doctor?
[ $\mathrm{B}^{2}$ zh ${ }^{2}$ shhki dimel es?]
B. Fitn nq:

Not yet.
[Dei voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]

Why are you delaying it? Go!
[Inchh ${ }^{\mathfrak{h}}$ es ushats ${ }^{\text {² }}$ num, $g^{ə}$ na?]
B. Цшクг q

I'll go tomorrow.
2. $A$ is a physician, B a patient.

What's your problem?
[Inch ${ }^{\mathfrak{b}}$ its ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$ gangatvum?]

I have a sore throat,
[Kokort ${ }^{\text {a }}$ s e ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ avum]
ๆпๆшшgincuf tuf: and I'm shivering.
[doghats ${ }^{\text {num }}$ nu]

[ $\mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ori ts ${ }^{\mathrm{d}}$ av unek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}{ }^{?}$ ]

[Voch ${ }^{\text {h }}$, bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sirts e khainum]

[Hima $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ənnem u tesnenk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
Let me examine you now, and we'll see (what's wrong)

Doctor, am I in a critical state?
[B²zhishhk, tsan ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{r}$ e vichak ${ }^{\circ}$ ? ${ }^{\text {? }}$ ]

Don't worry, you probably have a cold.
[Mi mtatsek ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, yerevi mrsel ek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
3. $A$ is a mother who brought her child to the emergency ward. $B$ is the receptionist.

Help me, my child's nose
[Ok ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ nets $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}}$, yerekhayis $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ot}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{itg}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]

[arat aryun e galis]

When did it start?
[Yerp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ask ${ }^{2}$ svel?]



[Chb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ gitem inch ${ }^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{n}$ e patchariə]

When the doctor comes, we'll find out.
[B²hishhk vor ga, amen inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kasi]

I wish the doctor would arrive soon!
[Yerani the bazhisḩka shut gar]
B. Stut'

Look, he's coming!
[Tesek ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$, aha galis e]

## II TEXT

## Фһ乌̆Ц












III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

| 怅r | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{igh}$ ］ | elephant |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［arajin hayats ${ }^{\text {kits }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | at first glance |
| un¢だ | ［togegh］ | ugly |
| 4tErrwint | ［kent ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ai］ | animal |
| くt\％ | ［mets］ | big |
| $41^{\text {²L }}$ | ［ ${ }^{\text {olukh］}}$ | head |
| ¢ипzпr | ［khoshor］ | huge |
|  | ［demk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | face |
| nre trim | ［vori vəra］ | on which |
| ш¢ ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［ $\operatorname{achhb~}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | eye |
| шј㕸ш安 | ［aynk ${ }^{\text {an }}$ ］ | so |
| timpr | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{rr}^{\text {］}}$ ］ | small |
|  | ［gret ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ］ | almost |
| $t_{\text {Trlum }}$ | ［yereval］ | to be seen |
| ш¢шโน | ［akanj］ | ear |
| $L^{\text {meju }}$ | ［layn］ | wide |
| ¢ftep | ［mech ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | back |
|  | ［bartst ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ］ | high |
| munp | ［votk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | foot，leg |
| unåk | ［tdzev］ | deformed |
| Snclf | ［mort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | skin |
| 7n！2 | ［gorsh］ | gray |


| $4 \pi \underline{4}$ | [guyn] | color |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | [beran] | mouth |
|  | [durs gal] | to stick out |
| ${ }_{\text {muille }}$ | [zhanik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | tusk |
| niming | [voronts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | of which |
|  | [yerkarut ${ }^{\text {dun] }}$ | length |
| ffeun! | [metər] | meter |
|  | [ants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nel] | to surpass |
| $44^{6}$ | [ $^{\text {nchchit }}{ }^{\text {² }}$ ] | trunk |
|  | [vorpes] | as |
| dinne | [dzeirk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | hand |
| дшппш的 $\hbar_{L}$ | [tsarayel] | to serve |
|  | [gortsoghut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun] | action |
|  | [katarel] | to perform |
| ¢шишпши | [hakarak] | despite |
| 2wh | [cch ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ ] | measure, size |
|  | [hakarak ir chib $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ erin] | despite his size |
| ethe | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b ich }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | little |
| numbulte | [utelik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | food |
|  | [gohanal] | to content oneself |
| $4_{6}{ }_{4}$ | [hez] | humble |
| P ${ }^{\text {mir }}$ ¢ | [bari] | kind |
|  | [barekam] | friend |
|  | [mart ${ }^{\text {] }}$ ] | human being |
|  | [ənkerakan] | friendly |
|  | [ashkhataser] | industrious |
| nıt | [uzh] | strength |
| оч ппшиш! | [ok ${ }^{\text {b }}$ takar] | useful |
| шшишји | [sakayn] | however |
|  | [ ²tangavor] $^{\text {a }}$ | dangerous |
|  | [darnal] | to become |
| trir Stur | [ir het] | with/to him |
| шโшш!ףш! | [anart ${ }^{\text {ar }}$ ] | unjust |
|  | [varvel] | to treat |
|  | [harvatsel] | to hit |
| 4 \%unfu | [getin] | ground |
| пшшшш! ${ }_{\text {¢ }}$ | [tapalel] | to subvert |
|  | [getin tapalel | to knock down to the ground |
|  | [kokhk rtel $^{\text {] }}$ | to trample |

IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

| UUPUど UWUbr | ［Marmni maser］ | BODY PARTS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $4 \pi$ | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}}$ or］ | abdomen，belly |
| flu | ［ ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ev}$ ］ | arm |
| stge | ［mech ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | back |
|  | ［moruk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | beard |
| шיјппL | ［aryun］ | blood |
|  | ［marmin］ | body |
| пuип！ | ［voskor］ | bone |
| $\pi\llcorner\square \overbrace{\square}$ | ［ughegh］ | brain |
|  | ［kurtsk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | breast，chest |
| шји | ［ayt］ | cheek |
| $44^{\text {m4 }}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {zak］}}$ ］ | chin |
| ш¢ш5¢？ | ［akanj］ | ear |
| murimisly | ［armunk］ | elbow |
| ш¢． | ［ $\operatorname{ach}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{k}}$ ］ | eye |
| Smip | ［honk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | eyebrow |
|  |  | eyelash |
|  | ［demk ${ }^{\text {b }}$／yeres］ | face |
| ๙шип | ［mat］ | finger |
| пип | ［votk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | foot |
| gпиgшヶ¢ши | ［tss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{amat}$ ］ | forefinger |
| ¢шцшш | ［chakat］ | forehead |
|  | ［maz（er）］ | hair |
| dincp | ［dzerik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ | hand |
|  | ［glukh］ | head |
| 山／рии | ［sirt］ | heart |
| $4 \pi L_{4}\left(t_{r}\right)$ | ［ $\mathrm{konk}^{\text {b }}$（er）${ }^{\text {d }}$ | hip（s） |
| wnhentir | ［aghik ${ }^{\text {ner }}$ ］ | intestines |

Unit 7

| ১¢ппи | ［tsnot］ | jaw |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sn\％ | ［hod］ | joint |
|  | ［yerikam］ | kidney |
| 子пLSu | ［tsunk］ | knee |
| urmıixp $^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［ $s^{\text {® }}$［unk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | leg |
|  | ［shər ${ }^{\text {th }}$ unk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | lip |
| LJШй | ［lyart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | liver |
| 64пи」は | ［chə ${ }^{\text {kuyt }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | little finger |
|  | ［mich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ namat］ | middle finger |
| Ftrums | ［beran］ | mouth |
| trgrisut | ［yeghung］ | nail（finger／toe） |
| リппип | ［port］ | navel |
| дпனгши | ［tsotsrak］ | nape |
|  | ［viz］ | neck |
| ¢ைш！＇t | ［nyart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | nerve |
| 2tr | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}} \mathrm{it}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | nose |
| phusp | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{imk}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］ | palate |
| ш¢ | ［ $\mathrm{ap}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | palm |
|  | ［matnemat］ | ring finger |
| пレи | ［us］ | shoulder |
| ィைบ4 | ［mashk］ | skin |
| 4 $\boldsymbol{w l}^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［gang］ | skull |
|  | ［voghnashar］ | spine |
| prasup $^{\text {¢ }}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }} \mathrm{unk}^{\text {b }}$ ］ | temple |
| шप7\％ | ［azd ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ］ | thigh |
| 4п4пワ\％ | ［kokort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | throat |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{b}^{\text {th }}$ amat］ | thumb |
| Lty\％ | ［lezu］ | tongue |
| шยпแน | ［atam］ | tooth |
| 5rw4 | ［yerak］ | vein |
|  | ［iran］ | waist |

## V GRAMMAR

## A. VERBS

## I. The Subjunctive Mood

Unlike the indicative mood, which denotes certainty and factuality, the subjunctive mood expresses potential, imaginary, conditional, or optional actions. In Armenian, the subjunctive mood has two basic paradigms: a) the subjunctive future and b) the subjunctive past.

## 1. The subjunctive future

The subjunctive future represents simple forms consisting of the infinitive stem and personal endings. There are two sets:


Thus, for the subjunctive future, all verbs follow the pattern below:

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers. ( $\boldsymbol{\iota} \boldsymbol{u}$ ) <br> 2nd pers. (qпи) <br> 3rd pers. (ะш) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [verb stem + -em or -am] } \\ & \text { [verb stem + -es or -as] } \\ & {[\text { verb stem + -i or -a] }} \end{aligned}$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers. (fftsup) <br> 2nd pers. $(\boldsymbol{\eta} \pi \leq \boldsymbol{p})$ <br>  | verb stem $+-t \tau_{L_{p}}$ or $-w \mathcal{L}_{\boldsymbol{p}}$ <br> verb stem $+t_{\boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{p}}$ or $-\omega_{\boldsymbol{p}}^{\boldsymbol{p}}$ <br> verb stem $+-\leftarrow \Sigma \leq$ or $-\boldsymbol{\omega}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [verb stem }+- \text { enk }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { or }-\mathrm{ank}^{\mathrm{b}} \text { ] } \\ & {\left[\text { verb stem }+-\mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}} \text { or }-\mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{h}}\right]} \\ & {[\text { verb stem }+- \text { en or }-\mathrm{an}]} \end{aligned}$ |

## SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE

|  | $41^{1 / 5}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| (tu) |  | 24ritur |  |  |
| (\%mL) | $4 r^{\text {¢ }}$ | 24ritu | 4шгппии |  |
| (\%и世) | 4r' | 24r巾 |  | 24шпиш |
| (ffticp) | $4 r^{\text {titiop}}$ | 24ritip |  |  |
| ( $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim}<\underline{p}$ ) | $4 r^{\text {r }}$ ¢ | 241tep | 4шгпше |  |
|  | 4176 | 24this | 4шгๆшки |  |

## 2．The subjunctive past

The subjunctive past forms are also simple and consist of the infinitive stem and a set of special personal endings．There are two sets：


Thus，for the subjunctive past，all verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（ $\boldsymbol{\leftarrow} \boldsymbol{u}$ ） <br> 2nd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{q}_{\boldsymbol{Z}}^{\boldsymbol{n L}}$ ） <br> 3rd pers．（£шш） |  | ［verb．stem＋－eyi or－ayi］ <br> ［verb．stem + －eyir or－ayir］ <br> ［verb．stem＋－er or－ar］ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers．（fftice） <br> 2nd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\square}\llcorner\boldsymbol{\perp})$ <br>  |  <br> verb．stem＋－thef $\quad$ or－w <br> verb．stem＋－t／ヶц or－шы／is | ［verb．stem＋－eyink or－ayink ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ <br> ［verb．stem + －eyik or－ayik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ <br> ［verb．stem + －eyin or－ayin］ |

## SUBJUNCTIVE PAST

|  | $41^{15}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative | affirmative | negative |
| （tu） | 4rith | 24－rth |  |  |
| （\％ロレ） | 4rtir | 24rtirior |  |  |
| （\％ıш） | $4 r^{\text {L }}$－ | 24rar |  |  |
| （fosicp） |  | 24rtinip |  |  |
|  | 4rtite | 24rtire |  |  |
|  | 4ratis | 24rtiru |  |  |



## Infinitive（ $)_{\text {ипшц }}$




## 3．Uses of the subjunctive future

In Armenian，both the future and past subjunctive have a wide range of applications with various meanings．Most commonly，they appear in subordinate clauses．

The subjunctive future has
a) an optative meaning expressing a wish or an urge that can be made in the form of a statement or question:

Let me come and see what's on.

## 

Should I say it or not?
b) a mandative meaning used in subordinate clauses starting with the conjunction $\pi_{\Gamma}$ [vor] that to express a command, a suggestion, a blessing or a curse:
 God forbid that it snow!

## 

Damn that day!

May God be your helper!

Make sure you are not late!
 peszi] in order to, to express a purpose or a goal:

I tried to finish my work.

I came to ask for something.
d) an inclusive first-person-plural imperative meaning that may be rendered by Let's ... or Let's not ...
e) in a less direct imperative function, the subjective third-person singular and plural forms are often intensified by adding the imperative $\boldsymbol{\beta}^{\prime} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{l}$ let:

ßпп 24 โиய': Let him/her stay! (Literally: Let him/her not go!)
f) a conditional meaning used in a subordinate (conditional) clause initiated by the conjunction $\boldsymbol{t / \partial L}$ [yet ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ e] if. Such conditions leave the question open as to whether the action will be fulfilled or not:

If we stay alive, we will experience many things.
g) a temporal meaning used in subordinate (temporal) clauses introduced by the conjunction $t_{\Gamma_{r}}\left[\mathrm{yerp}^{\mathrm{b}}\right.$ ] when. In such clauses, the verb always refers to the future:

## 

When you leave tomorrow, don't look back.

## 4. Uses of the subjunctive past

a) The subjunctive past resembles the subjunctive future in its optative meaning. There is, however a difference: the subjunctive past expresses an unfulfilled desire. This could be an action or an event that did or did not take place in the past. Correspondingly, affirmative forms indicate desired but unfulfilled activity and negative forms express events that were undesired but did occur. Usually, the optative meaning is reinforced in sen-

 etc.


```
I wish you had won. (But you didn't.) I wish I were not there. (But I was)
```

b) The optative meaning of the past subjunctive can also refer to the future. In that sense, the two forms, future subjunctive and past subjunctive, are very close in meaning, for
 However, in these parallel forms the latter expresses a much more urgent desire that is difficult or impossible to fulfill. A popular Armenian song of WWII period starts with the words

## 

I wish I'd fly home in my thoughts ...
c) The subjunctive past is often used in subordinate clauses. It appears in temporal clauses
 soon as, etc.

## ZLivg пן

As soon as he came in, the jokes would start.
d) To express a hypothetical condition, namely in a subordinate (conditional) clause initiated by the conjunction $t \not \mathcal{F L}_{6}$ [yet ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{e}$ ] if. Such forms imply that the action has not taken place or it is doubtful that it will:

## 

If you came, perhaps we would meet.
e) The subjunctive past forms are commonly used in conversation to make a request or to ask for a favor in a more polite way:

It would be nice if you went and called Maro.

## II. The Passive Voice

Verbs express not only mood, tense, person, and number, but also voice. In languages, voice is used to indicate whether the subject is the doer or the receiver of the action. Examples:



 the man.
 brought into focus and placed in subject position, while the original subject $\boldsymbol{\kappa}_{\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{w}_{\boldsymbol{l}} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{Z} \boldsymbol{R} \text { is }}$ removed from focus and shifted to the position of indirect object. In sentence (b), the real-


 stem with the suffix $-\iota_{l}-+$ the infinitive ending $-t_{[ }$. Examples:

| Active |  |  | Passive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4wڭwnt | to sell |  |  | to be sold |
| $4 \square_{\text {\% }}$ | to call |  |  | to be called |
|  | to read | $\rightarrow 4{ }^{\text {mur }}$ |  | to be read |
|  | to forget | $\rightarrow$ ¢пппug-w | $\rightarrow$ ¢пnпug-ltL | to be forgotten |
| $7_{7}^{5} L_{L}$ | to put | $\rightarrow \mathrm{rr} \boldsymbol{r}$ | $\rightarrow r^{-1 / 2} L_{L}$ | to be placed |

Passive verbs are conjugated like regular verbs ending in $-t_{l}$ :











In a passive sentence, the subject of the original sentence is transformed:

1) from the nominative into the ablative


2) from the nominative into a phrase, using the postposition $4^{\Pi \pi} \tau^{i} h \nmid y$ by + abl.:


The subject of the original sentence is often omitted altogether:

This occurs
3) when the doer of the action is unknown:

4) when the doer of the action is irrelevant:

5) when the doer of the action is easily inferred:

6) in reporting, where a tone of detachment and impartiality is relevant:

The fact that the original grammatical subject can be omitted allows passive verbs to be employed especially in impersonal sentences. Note that this applies only to the thirdperson singular:


As a rule, only transitive verbs followed by a direct object are readily transformed into a passive verb. However, in impersonal sentences intransitive verbs may sometimes be





## B. NOUNS

## 1. The instrumental case

The Armenian instrumental has no equivalent case in English. Whereas English expresses instrumental meaning by either a preposition such as with, by, on, etc., or the construction by means of, by way of, etc., Armenian achieves the same effect by adding the instrumental case marker to nouns and pronouns. The most common marker for the instrumental





## 2. Uses of the instrumental case

A. The instrumental expresses various meanings.
a) to show the instrument or the means by which an action is carried out:

Bread is cut with a knife.

I don't like to travel by plane.
b) to denote the addition of one item to another:

I like coffee with milk.

They cook this soup with rice.
c) to indicate the manner, way, or mode in which an action occurs:

He listened to me with emotion.

I waited patiently (literally: with patience).
d) used with singular forms of temporal nouns to denote limited periods of time:

## 

I came for a week.
e) used with plural forms of temporal nouns to express extended periods of time:

I haven't seen him/her for days / weeks / months, etc.
B. The instrumental case may be governed by a verb or an adjective (see p. 265):

I am pleased (content myself) with this sum.

## 

We are proud of our past.
 be pleased (to content oneself with something). In the second example, it is the construc-
 lations, the prepositions with and of convey the same meaning in English as the instrumental case marker - $n \boldsymbol{L}$ in Armenian.

Along with the instrumental forms, Armenian also uses nouns with postpositions (such as Sku with, or sfeqngny by means of, etc.). These parallel constructions have different meanings. Compare the use of the noun $\mu^{\alpha} / l_{2} 4$ doctor in the following two sentences where it is used (a) with the postposition $\mathcal{L t u r}^{\text {with }}$ and (b) in the instrumental case (without a postposition or preposition).

## Examples:

a) Noun $_{\text {dat }}+$ postposition $\leqslant \xi_{\text {ıu }}$ with

With fish they drink white wine.
b) Noun in the instrumental case

Fish alone doesn't fill me up.

## Other Examples:


Did you come (along) with people?

The streets were filled with people.
AND: qumg..th Stun (along) with the train vs. qumg.pnu by train


## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Armenian prepositions and postpositions

In languages, aside from declension, there are special words that create a grammatical relationship between words in a sentence. These are prepositions and postpositions. Prepositions appear before nouns and pronouns, and postpositions after them, although some of them can appear before or after nouns and pronouns. English has only prepositions, such as for, after, since, outside, etc. In Armenian, prepositions are less common than postpositions.
Armenian postpositions and prepositions require that nouns and pronouns following and pre-
 [masin] about that follows the noun or the pronoun placed in the genitive:

| еп ハைши\|й |
| :---: |
|  |
|  |
|  |

[ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{o}$ masin]
[ $g^{2} \mathrm{rk}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{i}$ masin]
[mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kants $^{\text {b }}$ masin]
[mer hyureri masin]
about you
about the book
about people
about our guests

Below are the most common postpositions classified according to the case they govern.

| POSTPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE | POSTPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE | POSTPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |

[^26]The most common prepositions are:

|  | [ankakh] | independent of | Abl. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| шппutıg | [ arants $^{\text {b }}$ ] | without | Dat. |
| 7 \% | [depi] | towards | Dat./Acc. |
| риии $^{\text {пи, }}$ | [วst] | according to | Dat. |
| lfir ${ }^{(L 2)}$ | [ip ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ( ev$)$ ] | as | Acc. |
| Sulimeis | [hanun] | for (the sake of) | Dat. |
|  | [minch ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ev] | until | Dat./Acc. |
| пrיцtu | [vorpes] | as, in the capacity of | Acc. |
| ¢шииешки | [nakhk ${ }^{\text {a }}$ a] | before | Acc. |

Compare the use of such prepositions:

| wnuluty $\mathrm{e}^{\text {try }}$ | [arants ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ez}$ ] | without you |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | [minchh ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ev yereko] | till evening |
|  | [hanun hayrenik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | for the sake of the fatherland |
| heric fimrt | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ rev mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | as a human being |

Many postpositions are by origin declined forms of nouns. Consider the following nouns in the instrumental case that are chiefly used as postpositions:

| Stunlumitent щшшпвшпп! な!2ngnt | [hetevank ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ov] <br> [patcharov] <br> [mijotss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ov] | as a result of because of <br> by means of | from <br> from <br> from | Sturlewixpinstr. result щшипкшп instr. cause sf/qnginstr means |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

Armenian postpositions and prepositions express various meanings, such as:


Manner щtьu as, sufus like, sftgngnt by means of, etc.




Some of them have more than one meaning. Thus, the postposition шпшथ can indicate both place (in front of) and time (before). The case they govern differs accordingly:



## VII WORD FORMATION

## Derivation of verbs

There are several suffixes in Armenian that form verbs derived from other word classes， such as a）from nouns，adjectives，adverbs and b）from simple verbs．

A．To derive verbs from nouns，adjectives and adverbs，Armenian has two productive suf－ fixes：$-\omega_{l}\left(\omega_{L}+\omega_{l}\right)[$ an＋al $]$ and $-t_{[ }$．It forms

1）intransitive verbs with $-\omega_{l}\left(\omega_{L}+\omega_{l}\right)$［－an＋al］
a）from nouns：

| $\left.\mathrm{p}^{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \boldsymbol{l} \boldsymbol{l}^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ar}\right]$ stone |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |

b）from adjectives and adverbs：

| ヶんょ［mets］big | $\rightarrow$ ¢t\％mium［metsanal］to grow，to be |
| :---: | :---: |
| шше［ tak $\left.^{\mathrm{d}}\right]$ warm | $\rightarrow$ пшцршโиш［tak ${ }^{\mathrm{L}}$ anal］to warm up |
| ＜tınпц［heru］far | $\rightarrow$ ¢trnutum［heranal］to go away，to depart |

2）intransitive verbs with $-t_{L}[$－el］
a）from nouns：
b）from adjectives：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { шщпцц [apush] stupid } \quad \rightarrow \text { шш } \Sigma^{\star}{ }^{\iota} \text { [apshel] to stun, to get astonished }
\end{aligned}
$$

3）transitive verbs with $-t_{l}[-\mathrm{el}]$
a）from nouns：
b）from adjectives：

| тшишй | k］empty |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| шщшイпи | apahov］secure |  |
| ш14 | parz］clear | $\rightarrow$ щшハサムょ［parzel］to clarify |

B．To form derivative verbs from simple verbs，Armenian uses various means：
1）the suffix $-(\boldsymbol{\omega}) \boldsymbol{g} \boldsymbol{g}_{\boldsymbol{L}}^{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L} /-(\boldsymbol{t})_{\boldsymbol{g}} \mathrm{S}_{\boldsymbol{L}}^{\boldsymbol{L}}$ ， to derive transitive（causative）verbs from intransitives：

Causation may also be expressed analytically by adding the verb $\boldsymbol{\tau} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ to give to the main verb：

## Examples：




Redundant forms，i．e．combinations of verbs ending in－（ш） $\boldsymbol{g}_{\Sigma_{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}} /-(\boldsymbol{L})_{\boldsymbol{g}}^{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}$ and the verb пшц，are common but not recommended：


b）the infixes－ип－，－пип－or－шип－to create verbs expressing repetitive actions：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| $4 n+4 L_{4}$ to step | $\rightarrow$ 4n¢unintı to trample |
| 4 |  |

c）the infix $-4-$ to construct
a．passive voice from transitive verbs：

| $\mathrm{p}^{\text {SLILtLIL }}$ to examine |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4ш\％ாロgtı to build | $\rightarrow$ 4wrangutt to be built |
| шய山ய¢์¢ to kill | $\rightarrow$ шщшโبи的 to get killed |

$$
{ }_{o l} \leqslant \varepsilon_{1} t_{L} \text { to bless } \quad \rightarrow o_{I} \leqslant \varepsilon_{L_{L}} t_{L} \text { to get blessed (see pp. 154-155) }
$$

b．reciprocal verbs from transitive verbs：

| untuittle to see | $\rightarrow$ menstult ${ }_{\text {L }}$ to see each other |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| putulith to separate | $\rightarrow$ pmdmirltrl to separate（from each other），divorce |

Not all verbs have this flexibility．Reciprocity is also expressed analytically by the recip－ rocal pronoun hriw each other．

We did not convince each other．
 These two friends love each other；they do not get tired of each other．
c．reflexive verbs from transitive verbs：

Reflexivity can also be expressed by a reflexive pronoun（i．e．p\＆yourself，hritis himself， etc．）：

## 

Don＇t praise yourself！
As the examples illustrate，$-\ell$－is added to the infinitive or aorist stem of the verb．This


$$
\begin{aligned}
& { }^{4} r_{r}-t_{L} \text { to love } \quad \rightarrow \mu_{r} r-\mu_{L_{L}} \text { to be loved } \\
& \mathrm{o}_{1} \leqslant \varepsilon_{L}-t_{L} \text { to bless } \rightarrow o_{1} \leq \varepsilon_{L}-L_{L} t_{L} \text { to be blessed }
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus，a series of related verbs can be created that vary in grammatical meaning：
intransitive

 ${ }_{4} \boldsymbol{u}_{\boldsymbol{J l}} \boldsymbol{t}_{1}$ to shine

## transitive

finuntgitt to draw closer むోようugity to make grow 4hujltightil to polish
passive
ununtyltal to be brought closer
 dhujlthelt to be polished

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The letters $\boldsymbol{2}$ \&, ช 夭, and 9 \&

 sounds:

```
voiced &&& [j]
voiceless non-aspirated & & [ch]
voiceless aspirated g & [chib
```

 ends with the voiced sibilant [zh] (cf. the English ' g ' in gender or ' j ' in $j$ jeans).

2) $\boldsymbol{z} \in$ represents the voiceless non-aspirated affricate [ch], a complex sound that starts with the voiceless non-aspirated stop $[\mathrm{t}]$ and ends in the voiceless sibilant [sh] (cf. the English 'ch' in bench).

3) $\boldsymbol{g}\left\{\right.$ represents the voiceless aspirated affricate $\left[\mathrm{ch}^{\mathrm{h}}\right]$, a combination of the voiceless aspirated stop [t] and the voiceless sibilant [ch] (cf. the English 'ch' in charm, arch).

Exceptions: in certain positions \& [j] can be pronounced like the voiceless aspirated $\mathfrak{\varepsilon}$ [ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]:


 woman $\rightarrow 4^{\text {Lung }}\left[\mathrm{k}^{\circ} \mathrm{noch}^{\mathrm{h}}\right]$ woman's, etc.





## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## $\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{n}$ or $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{f}$ ？

The letters $\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{n}$ and $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{n}$ stand for two distinct sound values： $\boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{n}[\mathrm{i}]$ is an alveolar tril－ ling or rolled sound with a strong vibration，like the＂ r ＂in Russian and Spanish． $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$［r］rep－ resents a softer，rather liquid sound．The meaning of two words can differ in the contrast of these consonants．Examples：

For beginners，the distinction between $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \pi$ and $\boldsymbol{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{r}$ represents a challenge in both pronun－ ciation and spelling．Therefore，the different spellings（ $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \boldsymbol{n}$ or $\boldsymbol{\rho} \boldsymbol{\rho}$ ）in certain Armenian words must be memorized．Here are some helpful hints：

1．As any Armenian dictionary shows，there are only a few words starting with the letters

 ก．пьшшипшц［Rंusastan］Russia，and their derivatives．There are even fewer words
 the Armenian male name $\rho_{\boldsymbol{w}}^{\boldsymbol{\psi} \boldsymbol{\Psi}}$ ；［Rafi］Raffi．

 ［garnan］，which is the genitive form of $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{m} \boldsymbol{r} \boldsymbol{m}\llcorner ⿺ 𠃊 ⺊ 口$ spring，etc．




4．Words，which in Classical Armenian ended in $\boldsymbol{n} \Sigma$ ，have dropped the final $£$ ，leaving the following words with a final n：$\quad$ пnın［dui］door，wfiwn［amaí］summer，diftn

5．Here are some commonly used words with $n$ in final position or between two vowels：

| шธипип | ［antar］forest <br> ［bari］word | แIZแル！ <br>  | ［arat］abundant ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}$ ap ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ arel to roam |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 42 hn | ［keshhir］weight | qпnп\％ | ［goroz］haughty |
| un | ［astai］lining | mLnmLg． | ［urutss ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］tumor |
| $p \mathrm{tan}$ | ［bei］load | шпшข脑 | ［ arachen $^{\text {b }}$ in］first |
| дmın | ［tsui］crooked | дшп | ［tsair］tree |
| щшишп | ［patar］piece，bite |  | ［zharang］heir，heiress |
| 1924wn | ［ ${ }^{\text {t }}$ sshlvari miserable | ¢шишпши | ［hakarak］against |

## X EXERCISES

1．Answer the questions according to the pattern．









そшとாレนீ ．．

2．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in $a, b$ ，$c$ ，and d．Replace the items









3．Answer the questions according to the pattern．



$\boldsymbol{\Pi}_{\text {！}}^{\prime}, \ldots$

$\boldsymbol{n}^{\prime}$ ，$\ldots$
 $\Pi_{\text {！}}^{\prime}, \ldots$

$\Pi_{\ell}^{\prime}, \ldots$

$\boldsymbol{\Pi}_{\text {！}}^{\prime}, \ldots$

$\boldsymbol{n}^{\prime}$ ！$\ldots$
4．Complete the sentences according to the pattern in a．








5．Ask questions using the items given in parentheses．Follow the pattern in a．


c．Orfis …（шшாாゥ」g）


f．2пц\＆．．．（ш！）
g．〈шдг …（4шГши）

6．Answer the questions following the pattern in a ．






7．Form sentences following the pattern in a．


c．（4／Likh，$\left./ \mathrm{Luf} t_{L}\right)$










9. Conclude the sentences, using the verbs in parentheses in the subjunctive mood.







10. Translate the sentences, using the appropriate subjunctive forms.
a. If I have time, I will be there.
b. If you want, we can go.
c. I want you to learn this proverb (шпшд).
d. I don't want you to leave.
e. If he came, we would see him.
f. If you saw Armenia, you would like it.
11. Ask a person a series of questions about her/his health in Armenian.
a) A classmate of yours is ill.
b) An elderly Armenian lady on the street does not feel well.
c) You visit an aunt in the hospital.
12. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.








## XI PROVERBS


[Gə lukhət vor ts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ avi, votk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ it ts ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ avə $\mathrm{k}^{2}$ moranas]
If you get a headache, you will forget your footache.

[Dzerk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ dzerk $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{k}^{\text {l }}{ }^{\text {v }}$ vana, yerkusn el yeresə]
One hand washes the other, and both wash the face.


A friend looks at your face, an enemy at your feet.

[Sərtits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ sirt champ ${ }^{\text {a ka] }}$
From heart to heart, there is a path.

## Unit 8



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Describing and comparing people and things ..... 170
Vocabulary: 1. Professions ..... 174
2. Adjectives, antonyms ..... 176
Grammar: VERBS: 1. The mandative mood ..... 177
2. The nominalized infinitive ..... 182
Adjectives: 1. Functions of adjectives ..... 184
2. Comparison ..... 184
Pronouns: Declension of personal pronouns ..... 186
Armenian-English Contrasts: The Armenian deictic system ..... 187
Word Formation: Formation of adjectives ..... 188
Pronunciation: Armenian 'diphthongs' ..... 190
Orthography: The spelling of Armenian 'diphtongs' ..... 191

## I DIALOGUES

1. $A$ and $B$ are colleagues, discussing their new director after the first meeting.

[Mer nor tnorenin tesar?]

[Durət galis e?]

[Yes nakhort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ in eyi shat sirum]

[Yes sran em havanum. Nə ${ }^{\text {ra }}$ yeluyt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]
 [verch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ in zhoghovin tpavorich ${ }^{h}$ er]

[Bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ mi k ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ich her $^{\text {b }}$ yerkar ch ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {khosets }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ?]

[Metsamit e $t^{\text {tho }}$ vum]
 [Isk artak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ini masin inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ kases?]


 [Iskapes nerkayanali mart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e]

[bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ da inch ${ }^{b}$ karevor e?]
 [Ktesnes, the inche hiyanali]
 [ghekavar e linelu]

[Husank ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$, vor ch ${ }^{\mathbf{h}}$ es $\mathrm{s}^{2}$ khalvum]

Have you seen our new director?

I liked his predecessor very much.

I like this one better. His speech at the last meeting was impressive.

But didn't he speak a bit too long?

He seems to be haughty.

And what do you say about his looks?

He's a handsome man, isn't he?

He is indeed a good-looking man,
but why is that important?

You'll see what a wonderful
leader he'll be.

Let's hope that you're not mistaken.
2. A and B are girlfriends, engaged in gossip.

Do you like Karo's fiancé?
[Havanum es Karoyi nshanatsin?]

I haven't seen her yet.
[Yes nəran der chhem tesel]

[Yerek yekel er mer havak ${ }^{\mathbf{b}}$ uyt $^{\text {b }}$ in]

[Inch hbisin e? Durət yekav?]

[Karoyits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aveli barts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ rahasak e]

[yev nranits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ tarik $^{\text {b }}$ ov mets]
B. 9nist qtintyfi4 5:
[Gone geghetssh ik e?]

If you ask me, she's ugly.
[Yet ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e indz harts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ənes, $\mathrm{t}^{\text {² }}$ egh e ]

[Inch ${ }^{b}$ er hak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el?]

[Anchashak kin e]

[Hetə khosetss ir?]

[Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$, ch ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {karoghats }}$ a. Ink $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{n}$ er ]

[bolorits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ shat khosum]

[In zarmats ${ }^{\text {² }}$ num e Karoyi chashakə]

[Na yerp ${ }^{b}$ e chashak unetss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ el?]

## II TEXT

## 








 иш





 ш々



## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

|  | [lavaguyn] | best |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 44шлш立 | [v²ayakan] | diploma |
|  | [gitnakan] | scientist |
|  | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ 2ntrel] | to search |
| -¢ | [ok ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nakan] | assistant |
|  | [karevor] | important |
|  | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ orts $\mathrm{s}^{\text {b }}$ arkum] | experiment |
| rturtos | [dimel] | to apply |
|  | [haytararvats] | announced |
|  | [verch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ apes] | finally |


|  | ［yeritasart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | young（man） |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［antsanot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | unknown |
|  | ［t ${ }^{\mathrm{t}}$ eknatsu］ | candidate |
|  | ［ ${ }^{\text {n }}$［ ${ }^{\text {th }}$ agir］ | recommendation |
|  | ［ 2 nt ${ }^{\text {th }}$ unel］ | to accept |
| шщшшшигแร | ［spasas ${ }^{\text {rah }}$ ］ | waiting room |
|  | ［ver kenal | to get up |
| 4684 | ［zijel］ | to yield |
|  | ［taretss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | aged |
| นึunctil | ［mtnel］ | to enter |
| Suritil | ［hanel］ | take off |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}}$ akel］ | to close |
|  | ［aghmuk］ | noise |
|  | ［arach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arkel］ | to offer |
| ршгшрш！ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ aghak $^{\text {b }}$ avari］ | polite |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{n} \mathrm{rp}^{\text {b }}$ an ${ }^{\text {2 }} \mathrm{kat}$ ］ | considerate |
| ऽшшппи 4 | ［hatuk］ | special |
| 万пロッリ | ［t ${ }^{\text {b }}$ oshak］ | stipend |
|  | ［stanal］ | to receive |
| ハипш行 | ［mtavor］ | mental |
|  | ［karoghut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | capacity |
|  | ［ nt $^{\text {b }}$ unak］ | capable |
| ш々｜นшшกшит！ | ［ashkhataser］ | diligent |
| ш！ш立 | ［arag］ | fast，quick |
| 624rin！ | ［ch²shgrit］ | exact |
| 4пSmgitt | ［gohats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nel］ | to satisfy |
|  | ［gətnel］ | to find |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ orts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | attempt，try |
|  | ［hnaravorut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | chance |
|  | ［dərsevorvel］ | to reveal himself |
|  | ［hatkut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | quality |
|  | ［miasin verts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ rats］ | taken together |
| ェீだみも | ［mit ${ }^{\text {e }}$ ？$]$ | Don＇t you think？／Isn＇t it？ |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ aylun］ | brilliant |
|  | ［arzhenal］ | to be worth |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

|  | [Masnagitut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yunner] | PROFESSIONS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | [hashvapah] | accountant |
|  | [derasan] | actor |
|  | [gyughatntes] | agronomist |
|  | [chartarapet] | architect |
|  | [arvestaget] | artist |
| ¢4writer | [ ${ }{ }^{\text {k }}$ arich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | artist-painter |
|  | [hats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ agorts] | baker |
|  | [varsavir] | barber |
| \% - Crıis | [darp ${ }^{\text {in }}$ in] | blacksmith |
|  | [vormnadir / hyus ${ }^{\text {n }}$ ] | bricklayer |
|  | [ ${ }^{2}$ savachari] | butcher |
|  | [atakhts ${ }^{\text {a }}$ agorts] | carpenter |
|  | [gandzapah] | cashier |
|  | [shinarar] | constructor, builder |
| П! | [khoharar] | cook |
|  | [atamnabuyzh] | dentist |
|  | [divanaget] | diplomat |
| miontis | [tnoren] | director |
|  | [b²hishk] | doctor, physician |
| 7tramu | [derts ${ }^{\text {bak }} \mathrm{ak}$ | dressmaker |
|  | [ t ntesaget] | economist |
|  | [inzhener, chartaraget] | engineer |
|  | [dzeinarkater] | entrepreneur |
|  | [yerkraban] | geologist |
| пultrite | [voskerich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | goldsmith, jeweler |
|  | [varsahardar] | hairdresser |

[^27]| $e^{\text {Susum }}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {b }}$ nnich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | inspector |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［lragrogh］ | journalist |
| 7шแш⿺𠃊卩 | ［datavor］ | judge |
|  | ［iravaban］ | lawyer |
|  | ［lezvaban］ | linguist |
|  | ［vacharakan］ | merchant |
| гпレよ¢пи」ノ | ［buzhk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyr］ | nurse（female） |
| 『пレのш4 | ［buzhak］ | nurse（male） |
| ¢ヶ¢！ | ［nerkarar］ | painter |
|  | ［deghagorts］ | pharmacist |
|  | ［banaser］ | philologist |
|  | ［lusan²karich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | photographer |
|  | ［dashnakahar］ | pianist |
| －ףШどレ | ［ $\mathrm{ot}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ach}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{u}$ ］ | pilot |
|  | ［banasteghts］ | poet |
|  | ［vostikan］ | policeman |
|  | ［varch＇${ }^{\text {apet］}}$ | premier |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{h}}$ ahana］ | priest |
| 7шแш｜ипи | ［dasakhos］ | professor，lecturer |
|  | ［tsəragravorogh］ | programmer |
|  | ［hratarakich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | publisher |
|  | ［ ${ }^{\text {tr }} \mathrm{ghth}^{\text {t }}$ akits $^{\text {b }}$ ］ | reporter，correspondent |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ artughar］ | secretary（male） |
| 4п24ш足 | ［koshkakar］ | shoemaker |
| 4шгпги | ［varort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | driver |
|  | ［masnaget］ | specialist |
|  | ［virabuyzh］ | surgeon |
| пLuпıgte | ［usuts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ich ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | teacher |
| wnturnu¢wis | ［arevtrakan］ | trader |
|  | ［anasnabuyzh］ | veterinarian |
|  | ［zhamagorts］ | watchmaker |
|  | ［banvor］ | worker |
| $4 \square^{4}$ | ［ ${ }^{\text {® }}$ rogh］ | writer |


| U．రUYU．Uとb？ | ［Atsakanner］ | ADJECTIVES |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Spis | ［hin］ | old |
| \＆n\％ | ［nor］ | new |
| ヶг¢ипшишг＇я | ［yeritasart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | young |
| $\delta t_{r}$ | ［tser］ | old |
| w－5¢14 | ［azniv］ | honest |
|  | ［anazniv］ | dishonest |
| 2472J2 | ［zguysh］ | careful，cautious |
|  | ［an²zguysh］ | careless |
|  | ［ashkhataser］ | diligent |
| дпレ」L | ［tsuyl］ | lazy |
|  | ［aratadzein］ | generous |
| $\delta_{\text {¢шип }}$ | ［zhəlat］ | stingy |
|  | ［geghets ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ ］ | beautiful |
| mヶちそ | ［tgegh］ | ugly |
| 4tr | ［ger］ | fat |
|  | ［nihar］ | slim |
|  | ［ $t^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{ap}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ vats ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ］ | sloppy |
| $4 \div 414$ | ［kokik］ | neat |
| 『ratur | ［ ${ }^{\text {l }} \mathrm{ukh}$ ］ | dark（about people） |
| ¢ишгпплшг | ［khartyash］ | blonde，fair |
|  | ［barts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ahasak］ | tall |
|  | ［karchahasak］ | short |
| Surtolt | ［hacheli］ | pleasant |
| un¢w6 | ［ t hach］ | unpleasant |
|  | ［hetak ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{rk}^{\text {b }}$ rakan］ | interesting |
|  | ［dzandzrali］ | boring |
|  | ［hetak ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {r }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ raser］${ }^{\text {d }}$ | curious |
|  | ［antarber］ | indifferent |
| nLdtin | ［uzhegh］ | strong |
| 『ாロ」J | ［ ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{uyl}$ ］ | weak |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{a}} \mathrm{aj}$ ，anvakh］ | brave，fearless |
| ¢ш¢ицпи | ［vakhkot］ | coward |
| ［ $712 \%$ | ［lurj］ | serious |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{et}^{\mathrm{b}}$ evamit］ | frivolous |

## V GRAMMAR

## A. VERBS

## I. The mandative mood

The mandative mood expresses actions or states considered by the speaker to be necessary and obligatory. There are four mandative tenses:

## 1. Mandative future I

 5 and the personal forms of the base verb in the subjunctive future (see p. 150): subjunctive future: $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{\sim}$


| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st (tu) <br> 2nd ( $\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{m L}}$ ) <br> 3rd (\%ш) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { [piti or petk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \text { e + verb stem+em/am] } \\ & {[\text { piti or petk } \mathrm{e}+\text { verb stem+es/as] }} \\ & {\left[\text { piti or petk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}}\right. \text { e + verb stem+i/a] }} \end{aligned}$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st (uttitp) <br> 2nd ( $\boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\sim}, \boldsymbol{p})$ <br>  |  <br>  <br> щ/иип | $\begin{aligned} & {\left[\text { piti or petk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}+\text { verb stem+enk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} / \mathrm{ank}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {\left[\text { piti or petk }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}+\text { verb stem+ek }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} / \mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {\left[\text { piti or petk }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{e}+\right.\text { verb stem+en/an] }} \end{aligned}$ |

## MANDATIVE FUTURE I

|  | Lt |
| :---: | :---: |
| (tu) |  |
| (qпレ) |  |
| (\%ıи) |  |
| (fLLT.p) |  |
| (qпレ¢) |  |
|  |  |

## 








## 2. Mandative past I

 and the conjugated personal forms of the subjunctive past (see p. 151).



All regular verbs follow the pattern given below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st（tu） <br>  <br> 3rd（4wu） |  | ```[piti or petk }\mp@subsup{}{}{\mathbf{b}}\textrm{e}+\mathrm{ verb stem+eyi/ayi] [piti or petk }\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{b}}\textrm{e}+\mathrm{ verb stem+eyir/ayir] [piti or petk}\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{b}}\textrm{e}+\mathrm{ verb stem+er/ar]``` |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st（uttic．e） <br> 2nd（ $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\pi}\llcorner\boldsymbol{L}$ ） <br>  |  <br>  <br>  | ```[piti or petk e e + verb stem+eyink (ayink}\mp@subsup{}{}{\mathbf{b}} [piti or petk}\mp@subsup{}{}{\mathbf{b}}e+\mathrm{ verb stem+eyik [piti or petk }\mp@subsup{}{}{\textrm{b}}\textrm{e}+\mathrm{ verb stem+eyin/ayin]``` |

## MANDATIVE PAST I

$4 r^{1 / 4} L$

## 4ш！！！～

affirmative

| （tur） |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （7пL） |  |  |
| （\％ıu） |  |  |
| （fotsp） |  |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{p})$ |  |  |
| （ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$ |  |  |

## 3．Formation of the negative paradigms

For both the mandative future I and mandative past I，the negation particle $\mathfrak{z}$－is prefixed to


MANDATIVE FUTURE I
MANDATIVE PAST I
negative

| （tu） |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| （\％ロレ） |  |
| （\％ши） |  |
| $L_{\text {L }}$ |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \times \boldsymbol{p}$ ） |  |
|  | 幺ufunt or \＆utunf 5 qutis |

## 4. Mandative future II and the mandative past II

In addition to the primary set of mandative paradigms, mandative future I and mandative past I, there are two secondary paradigms, which we will call mandative future II and mandative past II. They consist of the mandative future I and past I forms of the auxiliary




All regular verbs follow the pattern given below:

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers. (tu) <br> 2nd pers. (qпи) <br> 3rd pers. (ะшu) | participle in -шд or -шушб participle in -шд or -шушд participle in -шд or -шушд |  <br>  <br>  |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers. (ftisup) <br> 2nd pers. ( $\boldsymbol{\tau} \boldsymbol{\sim} \div \boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\mu})$ <br>  | participle in -шд or -шушд participle in -шд or -шушд participle in -шд or -шушд |  <br>  <br>  |

## MANDATIVE FUTURE II

## affirmative








## MANDATIVE PAST II








## 5. Formation of the negative paradigms

For this secondary set of mandative paradigms, the negative particle $\Sigma^{-}$is prefixed to



## 6. Uses of the mandative future I

a) The mandative future I denotes actions or states anticipated by the speaker in the future.

 ty or obligation, which at times can be perceived as an action contrary to the speaker's wish:

This year I must go to the army.

 in orders:

## 

You must leave this place immediately.
c) In certain contexts, mandative future I may also connote determination on the part of the speaker to carry out an action in the future:

I intend to continue my work.
d) Used in the second person, in some contexts the mandative future I may also indicate a supposition or presumption:

You must know my friend.
 mandatory meaning. Compare the translation:

##  <br> You must certainly know my friend.

## 7. Uses of the mandative past I

a) The mandative past I denotes a potential action or state that according to the speaker could have occured, but did not. Hence the negative meaning of affirmative forms and the affirma-




```
Next Sunday he was to get married. (In reality, he didn't get married.)
```

b) As the mandative past I indicates potential actions that did not occur, second-person forms are frequently used to express advice or a reproach:

## 

You should have bought that house. (You were going to, but didn't.)
This can be expressed by shorter sentences, such as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { You should have bought (it). You shouldn't have done that. }
\end{aligned}
$$

c) The mandative past I may also refer to the present time to express wishes and desires in a more polite manner. In that sense, it corresponds to the English "I would ..." or "I wouldn't...":

I would ask you to come with me.

## 8. Uses of the mandative future II

a) The mandative future II indicates an action that in the speaker's mind must be completed at a certain point in the future:
 By tomorrow I must have this work completed.
b) Used in the second person, the mandative future II can be synonymous with the imperative mood, indicating an order or a strong demand for an action to be completed at a certain point in the future:

## дшиீ

By 12 o'clock you must have brought the money.
c) In some contexts, the mandative future II can express an action that according to the speaker's conviction or guess must have been completed at the time of speech:

He must have gone long ago.

## 9. Uses of the mandative past II

a) The mandative past II indicates an action that should have taken place in the past but failed to do so:

The letter should have been written by now.
b) The very meaning of failure imparts to the statement a sense of wrong-doing. Hence the recurrent use of the mandative II in reproaches to others, as well as to oneself. It can be rendered in English by should have, shouldn't have, etc.

I should have phoned you. (But I didn't.)
 You shouldn't have told me that. (But you did.)

## II. The Nominalized Infinitive

The Armenian infinitive is readily nominalized and it is used in two forms:
a) with the definite article -r/-؟
b) with the possessive articles $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\eta},-п /-\longleftarrow$

The nominalized infinitive is declined like a regular noun following the $-\boldsymbol{\pi}$ declension. Below is the declension paradigm of the infinitive with the definite article -ц/-£ in the singular:*

| SINGULAR |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nom./Acc. |  | ¢ | ¢unutic |
| Gen./Dat. |  |  |  |
| Abl. |  |  |  |
| Instr. |  | \|ишワш!п! | \|unutın! |

Below is the declension paradigm of the infinitive used with the possessive articles $\boldsymbol{- \mu , -}$ $\boldsymbol{\eta},-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ in the singular:

| SINGULAR |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nom./Acc. | ${ }^{1 / 74 t}$ |  | [นпиt! |
| Gen./Dat. | ${ }_{\text {tr7tinLu }}$ | \|ишŋш!пレи |  |
| Abl. | tr7tinıgu | ¢ишŋш!пй |  |
| Instr. |  |  | \|unutinutu |

[^28]
## Uses of the nominalized infinitive

The nominalized infinitive ending with the definite article -ц/-£ is used as an abstract noun indicating an action or state. In this usage, the nominalized infinitive has much in common with the English gerund:
 Smoking is harmful.

Living is an art.

Nominalized infinitives are readily declined and fulfill various functions in sentences:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { You passed without noticing me. } \\
& \text { By crying you won't change anything. }
\end{aligned}
$$



With an attribution to a person, the nominalized infinitive appears with a noun in the geni-
 with the possessive article $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\not},-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ (see Unit 3, p. 55). It functions as a verbal noun that indirectly refers to a person's action or state. These personalized infinitives can transform complete sentences into nominal phrases designating facts. Compare:


The child is already walking. $\rightarrow \quad$ The child's walking made us happy.

They are late. $\quad \rightarrow \quad$ Their being late worries me.

Are you smoking? $\quad \rightarrow \quad$ Your smoking surprised me.
When derived from a transitive verb, these nominalizations may take a direct object:

You bought a new house. $\quad \rightarrow \quad$ Your buying a new house is good news.
Nominalized infinitives can also be prefixed with the negation marker $\{$-:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Anna is not answering. } \quad \rightarrow \quad \text { Her not-answering is strange. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Personalized formations appear also with case markers, as governed by a verb, preposition or postposition:

They didn't inform me about your falling ill.

After my departure everything changed.

## B. ADJECTIVES

## 1. Functions of adjectives

As in many languages, Armenian adjectives are used
 tive function);


3) as modifiers of verbs, indicating the manner in which an action is performed as

In all three functions, Armenian adjectives do not change forms. When used alone, however, to refer to people and things, Armenian adjectives function as nouns. As such, they can take on the definite article $-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$, the possessive articles $\boldsymbol{- \mu},-\boldsymbol{\eta},-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$, case markers according to the $-\boldsymbol{r}$ declension of nouns, and the plural ending -( $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \boldsymbol{L} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\Gamma} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}$.

 definite article $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ appears, rather than the common - $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$, after the final vowel of an adjective or after the final consonant, if the following word begins with a vowel: evil and the good (see p. 283).

When adjectives are used to refer to people in general, English and Armenian behave differently: While English uses only the singular, Armenian predominantly employs the plu-
 Moreover, unlike English, where only selective adjectives can be nominalized in this role, Armenian knows almost no restrictions.

## 2. Comparison

To indicate the extent or the degree of quality inherent to certain items, Armenian adjectives have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, and superlative.

The positive degree is the plain form of adjectives as they appear in dictionaries:
[ш丩 good
пигшן joyous


1) The positive degree is used in constructions where two compared items, persons, or events are said to be equal or similar in quality. This is rendered in English by the correlative subordinators as ... as. For this purpose, Armenian uses two constructions. The first construction includes шן
 His first novel is as interesting as the last one.
 govern the dative case (see Unit 7, p. 158):

## 

Aram is as diligent as Armen.
2) The comparative degree serves to compare two items according to greater or lesser degrees of quality. In Armenian, it is always a combination of the comparative $\omega \underline{L} / t_{L /}$ more (for supe-


a) To introduce the second item of comparison, comparative constructions involve the word puis than:

## 

The first row is more expensive than the second one.
b) The second item of comparison can be shown in the ablative case:

The first row is more expensive than the second one.
c) When adjectives hark back to an earlier sentence or clause for comparison, some sentence structures can be elliptic:
 My mother was always ill, but my father was not much healthier.
3) The superlative degree indicates the highest or lowest degree in quality. There are three superlative constructions in Armenian.
a) A construction consisting of wiftifg of all and the plain form of the adjective:
b) A derivation consisting of the superlative prefix шนเڭцш- and the plain adjective:
c) A derivation that combines the plain adjective with the superlative suffix -шqпицן $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ :




## C. PRONOUNS

## Declension of personal pronouns

As in English, Armenian personal pronouns make distinctions in person (first, second, and third), number (singular and plural), and case (although in Armenian, there is a more extensive declension paradigm: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, and instrumental). The declension of personal pronouns in Armenian is more developed than that of nouns. Armenian personal pronouns, however, do not distinguish gender in the third-person singular (as in the English he/she/it), but have two sets of pronouns in the third person.


## VI ARMENIAN－ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## The Armenian deictic system

Deictic words（I，you，here，now，this，that，etc．）reflect the speaker＇s proximity to things， people，time，and place．Languages express this proximity between speaker and reality in different ways．While standard English makes two distinctions（this／that，here／there，etc．），


This is illustrated in the table below where deictics indicate various distances from the speaker：（1）immediate proximity（шји［ays］this near me）；（2）moderate distance（ $\boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\jmath} \boldsymbol{\prime}^{\prime}$ ［ayt］that near you）；（3）greater distance（шјء［ayn］that over there）．

| 1．шји［ays］ | 1．шјшйt\％［aystegh］ | 1．шучешк［aysk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an］ | 1．шјшゅцьи［ayspes］ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2．шля［ayt］ | 2．шлףルトゥ［ayttegh］ |  | 2．шлтщц\％［aytpes］ |
| 3．шנч［ayn］ | 3．шృ¢ипt\％［ayntegh］ |  | 3．шјчщцьи［aynpes］ |

Here is a table corresponding to the same group of deictics in English．

| 1．this | 1．here | 1．this much | 1．this way |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2．that | 2．there | 2．that much | 2．that way |

Consequently，there can be no exact equivalents in translation．As illustrated below，the Armenian groups（2）and（3）are reduced to a single category in English．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 1. шји чケгег [ays girk }{ }^{\text {b }} \text { ว] this book }
\end{aligned}
$$

 these sounds are always present in the Armenian deictic system，for instance，in the personal


1．4hreи $\left[\right.$ girk $^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {S }}$ ］my book
2．\＃freft［girk ${ }^{\text {²t }}$ ］$]$ your book


[^29]
## VII WORD FORMATION

## Formation of adjectives

 ［ap－］．They correspond to the English prefixes un－，dis－，in－and the suffix－less．

Of all the adjectival and nominal prefixes in Armenian，$w i-$ is the most productive．It is chiefly used to create antonyms derived from
a）both radical and derived adjectives：

| นெшрпй clean | $\rightarrow$ шโиरшрппг ${ }^{\text {¢ }}$ unclean |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4шјпьโ steady |  |
| くш2п\％successful | $\rightarrow$ шโКш！пп unsuccessful |
|  |  |

b）nouns：

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| ¢゙った！guilt | $\rightarrow$ wโuftr innocent |
| ¢ппп odor | $\rightarrow$ шโム\％ип odorless |
| Smıju hope | $\rightarrow$ шия¢пији hopeless |

Note that abstract nouns ending in－пน $\boldsymbol{\beta}_{\boldsymbol{J} \boldsymbol{\pi}}\llcorner\boldsymbol{L}$ can be formed from most adjectives with the prefix $\boldsymbol{\omega L и}$（see Unit 3，p．58）．














Many of these adjectives can have parallel formations with the more productive prefix wis－：



 －пип［－ot］／－чпип［－kot］，－јшц［－yal］，－јшци［－yan］，－пи［－u］，－пцц［－un］，etc．are produc－ tive，adding various meanings to the adjectives derived from nouns，verbs，numerals， etc．They correspond to the English adjectival suffixes，such as－ish，－（l）y，－ful，－able，－ fold，－en，etc．

## Examples：

| －wli | บпицшц to dread | $\rightarrow$ ипицшц¢ dreadful |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | wnntu to hate | $\rightarrow$ шuntılt detestable |
| －шцшธ | $\boldsymbol{o r}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$ day | $\rightarrow$ огшишки daily |
| －54ш安 | $2^{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \boldsymbol{\zeta}$ profit |  |
| －ш4！ |  | $\rightarrow$ Ршчц์шム户 manyfold |
| －ш」／is | or air | $\rightarrow$ опшנ位 aerial |
| －ши | qпrıfr color | $\rightarrow$ чпь¢ишп pale |
| －ш延楊 | Pпилй scent |  |
| －w！$\square_{\text {－}}$ |  |  |
| －ヶリワ！ | mLSticum to have | $\rightarrow$ пLElın弓 wealthy |
| －ш近的 | 4шיц5\％r red |  |
| － 5 | фшшип wood | $\rightarrow$ ¢ишјйt wooden |
| －јш | шшш丩¢ glass | $\rightarrow$ шшцшцјш made of glass |
| －ヶワ | mod strength | $\rightarrow$ пцdtr strong |
| －65\％h | นึш」！mother |  |
| －br | Smattil to move | $\rightarrow$ Smıqher moving（emotionally） |
| －пп | $\mathrm{J}^{\boldsymbol{\prime \prime}} \mathrm{L}$ grease | $\rightarrow$ رпьףпип greasy，fat |
| － 4 ппп | 4ш！fear | $\rightarrow$ 㛧ципип fearful，faint－hearted |
| －JWL | пrutht to qualify |  |
| －јшия |  |  |
| －nL | Smuntu to cut | $\rightarrow$ Swиாпи sharp |
| －mLi | Squtig to sound | $\rightarrow$ S¢\％mLi sounding， |

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## Armenian＇diphthongs＇

Diphthongs are defined as the combination of two vowels that are pronounced as a complex but unsegmentable，gliding speech sound that makes up one syllable．For instance，the English ai in pain，oy in toy，oa in boat，etc．Armenian does not have diphthongs in the clas－ sical sense of the term．It combines，however，one vowel（ $\boldsymbol{\omega}, \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{n}, \boldsymbol{n} \boldsymbol{L}$ ）with the semi－vowel $\boldsymbol{J}$ to produce a sequence of two sounds that can in some positions within words be perceived as one syllable．There are two such sound combinations：
a）vowel＋」


пл［óy］：ןuпл［khóy］ram，\＆пл［Nóy］Noah

b）$\jmath^{+ \text {vowel }}$




 лц［yә］：пшлц［bayə］the verb，ןиплц［khoyә］the ram，etc．
Of the two groups of sound combinations listed above，those under（a），i．e．vowel＋」，are closest to sounds commonly known as diphthongs．However，these sound combinations can be easily segmented in Armenian，whereas in English they cannot．This occurs when new syllables starting with another vowel are added and the stress is shifted to the next syllable． In this case，according to Armenian hyphenation rules，the vowels are separated from ${ }_{\jmath}$ ．
 tea，\＆п－јшє ऽшшшє［No－yan Tapan］Noah＇s Ark，etc．

This is how the sound combinations listed above under（b），i．e．$\jmath+$ vowel，can be generated：

マш－јшшишци［Ha－yastan］Armenia



ऽш－лД［ha－yə］the Armenian（person）
from $\boldsymbol{\iota}_{\boldsymbol{w} \boldsymbol{j}}$［hay］Armenian
$-《 »-$
$-《 »-$
$-《 »-$
$-《 »-$

## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## The spelling of Armenian 'diphthongs'

 [ye], [oy], [yo], etc., (see previous page) can result from a variety of other spellings. Here are the most common ones:
[ey] is spelled not only $t_{J}$ but also $5_{J}$ in initial position of words of foreign origin (cf. $\boldsymbol{5} \boldsymbol{J} \boldsymbol{\Phi}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{L}$ Eiffel)
[oy] is spelled not only $\boldsymbol{r}_{\boldsymbol{J}}$ but also $\boldsymbol{o}_{\boldsymbol{J}}$ in initial position of words of foreign origin (cf. Оушиппицй Oistrakh)








 horse, etc.


 $t^{\text {th }}$ yun] fraud, etc.
[yə] never occurs initially and medially in Armenian words. It appears only in final position when the definite article $\underset{\Sigma}{ }$ is added to nouns ending in - $:$ [ $\boldsymbol{Z}_{J \Sigma}$ [teyə] the tea,
 (see Unit 1, p. 17).

All above-mentioned two-sound sequences are segmentable into two syllables and there-


 yon], d/rmil [dzi-yov], etc.

## X EXERCISES

1．Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column．



d．母пГ пьшшโாクロ




шјк ш＂





unturig tituct 5：

2．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in a，b，c，and d．Replace the items











3．Answer the questions，using antonyms．Follow the pattern．








4．Answer the questions according to the pattern．
 4r．etrig 5：






h．そш」た！

5．Use the nominalized infinitive according to the pattern．








6．Replace the words in boldtype with personal pronouns in the appropriate case．








7．Insert the appropriate forms of the verbs tuf，Lifituf or $4 ш u$ ．








8．Complete the sentences following the pattern．







9. How would you say it in Armenian?
a. Describe the appearance of your best friend.
b. Describe the character of your best friend.
c. Describe yourself.
10. You would like to know.

You have missed your first Armenian class.
You ask: i) a fellow student
ii) an older participant in the course
a. About the instructor
b. About the classroom
c. About the group
d. About the textbook(s)
e. About the assignments
f. About the next class
11. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.









## XI PROVERBS

Lши 5 ұ
[Lav e gitunin geri, $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ an angetin sireli]
Better to be a wise man's slave than a fool's friend.

[Shat anush e, takə ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ ush e]
(If) it's very sweet, there's a thorn underneath.
(Message: Beware of two-faced people.)
U.
[Anush lezun meghrits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ anush e]
A sweet tongue is sweeter than honey.

[Shat lava $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ ntroghə shat vatin k คhandipi]
He who searches for the best will encounter the worst.

## Unit 9



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Discussing weather ..... 198
Vocabulary: Nature, flowers, trees, animals .....  202
Grammar: Verbs: 1. Resultative constructions .....  205
2. Two-part verbs or phrasal verbs ..... 207
Nouns: The locative case .....  209
Pronouns: Interrogative and relative pronouns ..... 210
Armenian-English Contrasts: The relative pronoun $n_{\rho^{\prime}(\mathbb{L})}$ ..... 211
Word formation: Formation of adverbs .....  212
Pronunciation: Connecting words that belong together (liaison) ..... 213
Orthography: Hyphenation in Armenian ..... 215

## I DIALOGUES

$A$ and $B$ are roommates discussing the weather.

1. IN SPRING

[Inch ${ }^{4}$ hianali yeghanak e aysor!]
 [Verchb apes, garun e. Tsaierə ]
 [kanach ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ el en, tsaghiknerə bats ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ vel]
 [Ays tarva dzamerə mi $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ich}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
 [yerkar er. Arevin karot mnats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ink $^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Bayts ${ }^{1}$ shutov shok ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{~}{ }^{2}$ sk $^{\text {a }}$ svelu e]
 [Inch ${ }^{4}$ karch e Hayastani garuno!]

## 2. IN SUMMER


[Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ tak $^{b}$ e aystegh!]
Пшиппцรшโ!
[Patuhanə ch ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ enk $^{\text {b }}$ ?]

[Voch ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, drsum aveli tak ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ e]

[Bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ayntegh ot ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{n}$ aveli mak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ur e]

[Ayo, bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aysor khonav e]

## 3. In fall


[Durs es galis?]
 [Ayo, petk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ e gərasenyak ${ }^{2}$ nam]

What wonderful weather we are having today!

Finally, it's spring. The trees
have become green, flowers have opened.

This past winter lasted a bit too
long. We've missed the sun.

But soon the hot weather will start.

Spring in Armenia is so short!

It's so hot in here!

Shouldn't we open the window?

No, it's warmer outside.

But the air is fresher out there.

Yes, but it's humid today.

Are you going out?

Yes, I have to go to my office.
 [Andzrev e galu. Nayir amperin]
 [Voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ich $^{\text {b }}$, andzrevanots ${ }^{\text {b }}$ unem]

[Vorotum e, lasum es?]
Sшр Кшұһг, упигип 5:
[Tak hakir, ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ urt e]

[Indz hamar ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ urt cher ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Sirum em zov yeghanakə!]

## 4. In WINTER


[Aysor shat ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ urt e, mrsum em]

[Tasn astichan $z^{2}$ royits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ts ${ }^{\text {bats }}{ }^{\curvearrowright} \mathrm{r}$ e]

[Yev inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uzhegh $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ami e!]

[Kartses dzyun e galu]

[Mi asa, norits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ dzyun?]

[Mi gangatvir!]

[Ays tari dzãmerəə meghm e]

[Irava ${ }^{h}{ }^{\text {ts }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ i es. Misht nuynn e]
 [Amranə dza ${ }^{\text {a mer }}$ enk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ ntrum,

[dz² mranə amar]

It's going to rain. Look at the clouds!

No problem, I have an umbrella.

There is thunder, can you hear it?

Put something warm on, it's cold.

I don't feel cold.

I like cool weather.

It's very chilly today, I'm cold.

It's ten degrees below zero.

And what a strong wind!

It looks like it will snow.

Don't tell me it's going to snow again.

Don't complain!

You're right. It's always the same:

In summer we long for winter,
and in winter we long for summer.

## II TEXT

## 















## 










## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

|  <br>  | ［ch²shmarit］ <br> ［patmut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | true，genuine story | PחクFחף | ［tsatsk²vel］ ［boghboj］ | to get covered bud |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［terevakhit］ | full of leaves | u¢！\％Lर | ［sirun］ | pretty |
| วшй | ［tsair］ | tree | 子шそ位 | ［tsaghik］ | flower |
| шยипшп | ［antar］ | forest | くwqgith | ［hagts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ nel］ | to dress |
| untril | ［terev］ | leaf |  | ［i verch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ o］ | finally |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{sk}^{2} \mathrm{sel}$ ］ | to start | 4wlulth | ［kakhvel］ | to hang |
|  | ［deghnel］ | to turn yellow | щนпп | ［ptugh］ | fruit |
| Stun | ［heto］ | after，then |  | ［pes－pes］ | various |
| Pロリア！ | ［bolorə］ | all of them |  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\text {b }}$ aylel］ | to shine |
|  | ［voskeguyn］ | gold－colored |  | ［pokel］ | to pick |
|  | ［dainal］ | to become | ши์шп | ［amar］ | summer |
| 564－554 | ［mek－mek］ | one－by－one | пu4th | ［voski］ | gold（en） |
|  | ［getin］ | ground | 2traminu | ［verch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anal］ | to end |
|  | ［ənknel］ | to fall |  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{b}}$ ani vor］ | since |
| шてпLL | ［ashun］ | autumn | 4r4turlt | ［ rk $^{\text {² }}$ nvel］$]$ | to repeat itself |
| 4шиюшл－4ши์ия | ［kamats ${ }^{\text {b }}$－ka | $\mathrm{ats}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ］slowly |  | ［karotel］ | to miss |
| 万шш¢！ | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{a}} \mathrm{ap}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{el}$ ］ | to pour | 4Frthylt | ［geghets ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ik}$ ］ | beautiful |
| $15 \%$ | ［mi or el］ | and one day |  | ［garun］ | spring |
|  | ［dzyun］ | snow |  | ［shut ari］ | come soon！ |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{il}$ ］ | flake |  | ［berel］ | to bring |
|  | ［tsatskel］ | to cover |  | ［tak ${ }^{\text {b }}$（uk）］ | warm |
|  | ［merkats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ats］ | naked | щшјдшп | ［paytsari］ | bright |
|  | ［chyugh］ | branch | ¢「ヶ\％\％ | ［yerkogh］ | singing |
| ¢ш¢イпи 4 | ［ $p^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ap}^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{uk}$ ］ | soft |  | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\text {2 }}$ rich $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{un}$ ］ | bird |
|  | ［vermak］ | blanket | 7山で | ［dasht］ | field |
| щ¢и | ［pes］ | like | F\％gtL | ［bats ${ }^{\text {el }}$ ］ | to open |
| duten | ［dza mer］ | winter | 万п\％ | ［ ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{Ogh}$ ］ | may，let |
|  | ［anhetanal | to disappear | F\％uglt | ［bats ${ }^{\text {b }}$ vel］ | to open up |
|  | ［meghm］ | mild |  | ［tsaghkel］ | to bloom |
| $\operatorname{smu}(144$ | $[\operatorname{hov}(\mathrm{ik})]$ | wind | 4以י\％ | ［vart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | rose |
|  | ［shoyel］ | to caress | 15／um4 | ［mekhak］ | carnation |
| р ${ }^{\text {¢ишб }}$ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {a }}$ nats］ | asleep |  | ［shushan］ | ily |
| wrlu | ［arev］ | sun | 4104 | ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ak}$ ］ | close |
|  | ［tsak ${ }^{\text {el }}$ ］ | to rise | шqшш！ | ［azatvel］ | to break away |
| くwiproritl | ［hamp ${ }^{\text {u }}$ urel］ | to kiss | gwortmuntı | ［ts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ atkotel］ | to jump around |

## IV THEMATIC GROUP OF WORDS

|  | ［Yeghanak］ | WEATHER |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［amp（er）］ | cloud（s） |
|  | ［mshush／marakhugh］ | fog |
| 4шГИппип | ［karkut］ | hail |
| шшกாเรู | ［saruyts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | ice |
| 4шјдши | ［kaytsak］ | lightning |
|  | ［andzrev］ | rain |
| г¢шбши | ［tsiatsan］ | rainbow |
| ппппп | ［vorot］ | thunder |
|  | ［yerkink ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | sky |
|  | ［dzyun］ | snow |
|  | ［ $p^{\text {b }}$ ot ${ }^{\text {b }}$ orik／dzyunamərrik］ | storm／snowstorm |
| шrı | ［arev］ | sun |
| ршиг¢ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ami］ | wind |
|  | ［Tsaghikner］ | FLOWERS |
| шแルワшよшそ14 | ［astghatsaghik］ | aster |
|  | ［mekhak］ | carnation |
|  | ［margartatsaghik］ | daisy |
| ＜шш上！ 4 | ［hasmik］ | jasmine |
|  | ［shushan］ | lily |
|  | ［hovtashushan］ | lily of the valley |
| 4шリス | ［vart ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | rose |
| 4ш仙位 | ［kakach ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | tulip |
| cunber | ［Tsarer］ | TREES |
| Siztsin | ［ ${ }{ }^{\text {shheni］}}$ | almond tree |
| Rucadnrasin | ［khndzoreni］ | apple tree |
|  | ［tsiraneni］ | apricot tree |
| 4ty | ［ kech $^{\text {b }}$ i］ | birch |
|  | ［baleni］ | cherry tree |


| Sunkr | ［nochi］ | cypress |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | maple tree |
|  | ［kaghni］ | oak tree |
|  | ［armaveni］ | palm tree |
|  | ［tandzeni］ | pear tree |
| trusir | ［yeghevni］ | pine tree |
| шш！п！ | ［saloreni］ | plum tree |
| cincturn | ［nəineni］ | pomegranate tree |
|  | ［bardi］ | poplar |
| 4trwutir， | ［keraseni］ | cherry tree |
|  | ［ənkuzeni］ | walnut tree |
| nlutish | ［ureni］ | willow |
| ¢¢SUど ¢buqu．uhubr | ［Ontani kent ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aniner］ | DOMESTIC ANIMALS |
| 4mithe | ［gomesh］ | buffalo |
| 溉は | ［hort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | calf |
| 4шипน | ［katu］ | cat |
|  | ［kov］ | cow |
| $2^{\text {пLL }}$ | ［shun］ | dog |
| 52／ш⿺𠃊ை巡4 | ［esh／avanak］ | donkey |
| шјд | ［ayts］ | goat |
| $d /$ | ［dzi］ | horse |
| qшпи（\％пレ4） | ［gari（nuk）］ | lamb |
| ｜unt | ［khoz］ | pig |
| кшчш！ | ［chagar］ | rabbit |
| п¢！ | ［voch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ khar］ | sheep |
| SuW3hu Rfonkutur |  | DOMESTIC BIRDS |
|  | ［deghts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ anik］ | canary |
| 6пLип | ［chut］ | chick |
|  | ［aghavni］ | dove，pigeon |
| F\＃\％ | ［bad］ | duck |
| шшџ | ［sag］ | goose |


| Sul｜ <br>  <br>  <br>  <br> 山！ | ［hav］ <br> ［ak ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ aghagh／ak ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ lor］ <br> ［həndkahav］ <br> ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ak}$ ］ <br> ［siramarg］ | hen <br> rooster，cock <br> turkey <br> parrot <br> peacock |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［Vayri th ${ }^{\text {r }}$ ch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ unner］ | WILD BIRDS |
| шұпш！ <br>  <br> pшqt <br> 4шそшそш！ <br> иприши <br> ${ }^{[7 n}$ <br> 4шеши <br> Lnr（ 14 ） <br>  <br> шшглия <br> шгшゅt！ <br>  <br> य14\％7 <br>  | ［agrav］ <br> ［artsiv］ <br> ［baze］ <br> ［kachhaghak］ <br> ［sokhak］ <br> ［bu］ <br> ［kak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ av］ <br> ［lor（ik）］ <br> ［chənchəghuk］ <br> ［saryak］ <br> ［aragil］ <br> ［tsitsernak］ <br> ［angəgh］ <br> ［ $p^{\mathrm{b}}$ aytp ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ orik］ | crow <br> eagle <br> falcon <br> magpie <br> nightingale <br> owl <br> partridge <br> quail <br> sparrow <br> starling <br> stork <br> swallow <br> vulture <br> woodpecker |
|  | ［Vayri kent ${ }^{\text {b }}$ aniner］ | WILD ANIMALS |
| ш／？ <br> れね <br> wrttru <br>  <br> єшшџшипши <br> шпјпцよ <br> 4шщ户й <br>  <br> ！шュワ <br> qwJl | ［archl ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ］ <br> ［ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}}$ igh］ <br> ［aghves］ <br> ［əndzught］ <br> ［napastak］ <br> ［aryuts］ <br> ［kapik］ <br> ［rongeghjyur］ <br> ［vag．r］ <br> ［gayl］ | bear <br> elephant <br> fox <br> giraffe <br> hare <br> lion <br> monkey <br> rhinoceros <br> tiger <br> wolf |

## V GRAMMAR

## A. VERBS

## 1. Resultative constructions

A limited number of neutral verbs and all passive verbs (ending in $-L_{L} t_{L}$ ) form special syntactic constructions known as resultatives. The resultative constructions consist of the auxiliary verb tif - in the present and imperfect tenses respectively - and the past participle




All types of verbs listed above follow the pattern below:

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers. (tur) |  | [-ats em /eyi] |
| 2nd pers. (\% $\boldsymbol{H}_{\text {L }}$ ) | infinitive stem + -шд Lu/5 $\boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\Gamma}$ | [-ats es/eyir] |
| 3rd pers. (\%uw) | infinitive stem + -шд $5 / 5$ Г | [-ats e/er] |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers. (fthipe) |  | [-ats enk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ /eyink ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] |
| 2nd pers. ( $\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \boldsymbol{\llcorner} \boldsymbol{p}$ ) |  | [-ats ek ${ }^{\text {b }} / \mathrm{eyik}^{\text {b }}$ ] |
|  |  | [-ats en/eyin] |


| Present | Past | Present | Past |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢uuntil | it down | SmLqutris | to be moved |

## Affirmative



## 2．Uses of resultative constructions

Resultative constructions can be formed from verbs expressing the following meanings：







While Armenian present tense constructions（see pp．10－11）express actions in progress， resultative constructions denote a state that resulted from a prior action or process．Let us compare parallel forms of the same verbs．

Present indicative
£umntuf tuf I am sitting down

4шпппу丩゙пиீ 5 it is being built

Present resultative
£шшшみ เıf I am sitting
 4шппцуไ山よ 5 it is built

As can be seen，the word order in both the－nนцf［－um］and－w $[-$ ats $]$ constructions coin－ cides in affirmation．It differs，however，in negation．



A closer look at the resultative constructions reveals a difference in temporal meaning depending on the semantics of the base verb．While resultative constructions of verbs denoting human states express present time（ $\boldsymbol{p}_{\text {fiud }}$ tiu they are sleeping［now］，Snqiuш

 dimensions of time：

## PAST

4шппцgय少 5
（it）has been built

## PRESENT


（it）is being built

## FUTURE


（it）is going to be built

The same distinction holds for the imperfect forms of resultative constructions：

|  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （it）was built | it was being built | it was going to be built |

[^30]
## 3. Phrasal or two-part verbs

 phrasal or two-part verbs. Phrasal verbs derive from short verbs that indicate movement


 has by far a greater inventory of such verbs. Phrasal verbs are present in both written and spoken Armenian, but are most typical of informal and colloquial speech. The two parts are perceived as a whole and can often be replaced by another verb with the same meaning:



 Armenian two-part verbs are have no solid counterpart in Armenian. Compare: gпицg шпш



Armenian two-part verbs consist usually of a short verb and a complementary word of any




 वшјч这J! plex tenses with the auxiliary verb always preceding the participle (see p. 35).

There are also two-part verbs consisting of two verbs usually combined by a hyphen. These combinations express two simultaneous or consecutive actions that are perceived as a unity. Due to the dynamism that such formations impart to speech, they are more popular in colloquial use: $\pi\left\llcorner\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{L}}\right.$ -



 to wear+to tie), etc. As a rule, both parts are conjugated, appearing in the same tense: пицппиนーן -


## SOME COMMON PHRASAL OR TWO－PART VERBS

|  | to listen | （S）ヶип 4 ¢ | to come back |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | to learn by heart | （く）ちи\％ | to fall behind |
|  | to pass，to go away |  | to take back |
| 山＜t $49^{\text {tu }}$ | to glimpse | くпищу шпй | to push，to squeeze |
| шイ¢п！แшц | to bewitch（by an evil eye） |  | to mock |
|  | to create |  | to obtain |
| шпш如 | to emerge |  | to touch |
|  | to further | dtrep iftuctul | to give a hand |
|  | to promote |  | to give up |
|  | to greet |  | 1．to stroll；2．to search |
| Fwg wistal | to open |  | to take smb．for a walk |
|  | to bring about，to achieve |  | to cite，to quote |
|  | to be achieved | HEQ | to meddle，to interfere |
|  | to come to terms |  | to drag smb．in |
|  | to realize |  | to think，to contemplate |
|  | to oppose | ルпип $\downarrow$ ¢ | to approach |
| 7 7－if $7^{\text {cithen }}$ | to resist |  | to come in |
|  | to throw away |  | to drag in，to involve |
| 7ロレア ¢ ¢ | to please |  | to turn over |
|  | to expel |  | to turn |
|  | to exit，to come out |  | to trample |
| tn 4 U | to boil | щшГ ұШй | to dance |
|  | to spoil（ a person） | иイ！ | to take courage，to dare |
|  | to get spoiled |  | to get encouraged |
| 万шш¢ ппш | to shake |  | to worry |
| fle wriftil | to get encouraged |  | to encourage |
| ［7mıJL וпшц | to allow | ипьи 4ڭ¢ши | to remain silent |
|  | to chat |  | to give up |
|  | to cry |  | to fall down |
|  | to play |  | to stand up |
|  | to avoid |  | to avenge |
| дш¢ ьпиц | to applaud |  | to appropriate |
|  | to stop | gпıлg וпши | to show |
|  | to put in order |  | to collapse |
|  | to bring back | ¢ппй ипшц | to lend |

## B. NOUNS

## 1. The locative case

The locative case generally indicates the location where the action expressed by the verb is taking place. The Armenian locative has no equivalent case in English. Whereas English expresses locative meaning by a preposition such as in (cf. in school), at (cf. at home), etc., Armenian achieves the same effect by adding the locative case marker to nouns and some pronouns. The most common marker for the locative case is $\boldsymbol{- n L L} \boldsymbol{f}$, which is added to a




## 2. Uses of the locative case

Unlike other cases in Armenian, not all nouns can take the locative case. Due to the meaning they express, some semantic groups of nouns lack the locative case ending in -muf:




 locative meaning arises, the preposition sto in is used with the noun in the genitive case:
 many cases, the locative ending in -muf and the analytical construction noun $n_{\text {gen }}+\boldsymbol{\kappa} \hbar \ell$ are interchangeable:

|  | or |  | in the work |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | or |  | in your eyes |
| ¢и¢ บгиппик | or | huf urunt ufty | in my heart |
|  | or | 4retrer ite | in the books |

In addition to nouns, many other parts of speech can take the locative case marker -muf.

 many other parts of speech that take the locative case marker -mLuf, such as pronouns: $\boldsymbol{\eta}^{\boldsymbol{m}}$


Besides the locative of place, a locative of time is often used to indicate the time within




## C. PRONOUNS

## Interrogative and relative pronouns

Interrogative pronouns are words with which particular questions are asked: $\pi^{\circ} \downarrow$ who?,
 Without the question mark, these words can serve as relative pronouns. Relative pronouns introduce relative sentences that refer to an antecedent in the main clause or complement certain sentence elements. Here are some of the most common interrogative pronouns and their corresponding relative pronouns in Armenian:

Uш шы







 my family.

$\boldsymbol{b} \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ where I was supposed to go.

 father died.





[^31]
## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## The relative pronoun $n_{r l}(\underline{L})$ in Armenian

1. The use of relative pronouns in relative clauses in Armenian and English reveals considerable differences. Thus, for the single pronoun $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{I}_{(\underline{L}}(\underline{)}$ in Armenian, English has a set of three relative pronouns: a) who, b) which, and c) that. Who refers to a personal antecedent, which to a non-personal one, while that does both or follows its own rules. Unlike English, however, Armenian makes a distinction between singular and plural,



2. The English who has two declined forms (whose and whom), while the Armenian $\pi_{\Gamma_{r}}\left({ }_{\Gamma}\right)$ $[\operatorname{vor}(ə)]$ has an extensive declension paradigm with two distinct sets for both the singular and the plural:

| Singular |  |  | Plural |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nom. | $n r^{(L)}$ | [vor(ə)] |  | [voronk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | who, which, that |
| Gen. | nr! | [vori] | пппLug | [voronts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | whose, of which |
| Dat. | пrıis | [vorin] | niming | [voronts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | to whom, to which |
| Acc. | nrisur | [vorin] (person) |  | [voronts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | whom, which |
|  | $\pi r_{r}(\underline{L})$ | [vor(ə)] (non-person) |  |  |  |
| Abl. | nithg | [vorits ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ] | nimingty | [vorontss ${ }^{\text {b }}$ its ${ }^{\text {d }}$ ] | from whom, from which |
| Instr. | пrn'l | [vorov] | nimignt | [vorontst ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ov}$ ] | with whom, with which |
| Loc. | пПппй | [vorum] | п[пйgnıuf | [voronts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{um}$ ] | in whom, in which |

Distinctions in case are made according to the government of the verb, distinctions in number according to the number of antecedents. Compare:


3. While the English relative pronoun may be omitted when used as a direct object, the use of a relative pronoun in Armenian relative clauses is obligatory:

4. Armenian has also a set of indefinite relative pronouns consisting of two words: $n \boldsymbol{\pi}$





## VII WORD FORMATION

## Formation of adverbs

While adjectives primarily modify nouns, adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. In doing so, they describe how, when, where, and to what degree an action is performed. The most important types of adverb are:


c) adverbs of time (question: $\boldsymbol{L}^{\mathrm{D}} \boldsymbol{r}^{\boldsymbol{R}}$ [yerp ${ }^{\mathrm{L}}$ ?] when?)

e) adverbs of measure (question: пן .ешц [vork ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ an?] how much?)

According to their formation, various categories of adverbs may be established:

1. Radical adverbs that cannot necessarily be identified as derivations from other words:


2. Adverbs derived from adjectives by means of the following suffixes:


-шщьь: шыц [ayl] other $\rightarrow$ шыцшщци [aylapes] otherwise


3. Adjectives functioning as adverbs without affixes:


4. Nouns with case markers:


5. A special participle ending in - $\boldsymbol{h} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ (see p. 237) indicates simultaneity of actions:


6. Many infinitives in the instrumental case can be used as adverbs of manner:


7. Repetition of adjectives or adverbs constitutes another productive model:

шгшұ [arag] fast $\quad \rightarrow$ шןшұ-ш्шшұ [arag-arag] quickly

8. Repetition of nouns, with the first part appearing in the ablative case:




## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## Connecting words that belong together (liaison)

In Armenian, some words in an utterance stand out by means of stress while others remain in the background. Depending on their role in a sentence, i.e. whether they are lexical words (nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, numerals, pronouns) or grammatical (auxiliary verbs, conjunctions, particles, the indefinite article), words can be stressed or unstressed respectively. In the flow of speech, many grammatical words are more likely to be unstressed and they may be reduced to weak forms. As a result, in reading or speaking, two or three separately written words can be drawn together, using one stress and uttered all in the same breath. This phenomenon is referred to as 'liaison'.

1. Liaison occurs when a stressed lexical word is followed by an unstressed grammatical word that usually starts with a vowel:

2. Liaison is particularly evident in comound verbal forms where auxiliary verbs starting in $t$ connect to participles of the conjugated verb:


Note that in the verbal forms above, the initial $t$ [ye] is pronounced [e], which is the typical pronunciation of $t$ in a medial position of words. Compare also the liaison of words other than verbs:

пицшци Lif [urákhem] I am glad
3. In complex verbal forms, when auxiliary verbs appear with the negative particle ' $z$-' the stressed word is the auxiliary while the basic verb remains unstressed:

[^32]



4. In the mandative future, it is the participle that is stressed while the particle $\mu \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}$ is unstressed:

щһипィ ұппи'г [piti goiám] I am going to scream
щһшпи шиட'и [piti asés] you are going to say it (informal you)



5. In prohibitive constructions, it is the particle $\kappa^{\rho} f^{\prime}$ that is emphasized:

$\boldsymbol{U} \boldsymbol{i}^{\prime} \quad \boldsymbol{q}^{\boldsymbol{q}} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{u}$ [mígəna] Don’t go!
6. Liaison occurs also in the infinitive form of phrasal or two-part verbs (see pp. 207-208) where the non-verbal element is normally stressed while the verb itself is not:

щш'г чшц [pár gal] to dance


The same applies to all conjugated forms of these verbs where the stress remains always on the non-verbal part. Compare:


In all other cases in conjugation, when the pattern consists of three words, these are drawn together like one word with only a single stress on the non-verbal component:


7. Two-part conjunctions, with the second part being $n \boldsymbol{n}$ or $\not \boldsymbol{Z} \neq$, stress only the first part:



## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## Hyphenation in Armenian

To hyphenate words, Armenian uses the same sign (-) as English does. The following rules apply in Armenian:
 etc., are not divisible.


 นึயைーףшџ consisting of many members, etc.


5. Three consonants between two vowels are divided by keeping the first two consonants


6. The unwritten but pronounced $\underset{\Sigma}{ }\left[{ }^{2}\right]$ before and between consonants constitutes a syllable and must therefore be written when hyphenated: $4\left[\Gamma-4 L_{L}\right.$ to embrace from $\boldsymbol{q}_{1} \Gamma_{L} L_{L}$,
 start from $\boldsymbol{u L} \boldsymbol{L}_{L} \boldsymbol{L}_{L}$, etc.
7. A lone letter cannot be transferred to the next line.


9. Compound words, with one consonant between two vowels, can be separated either according to their components or according to the general rule by which a consonant







## X EXERCISES

1．Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column．

2ヶたにए
U．zாடโ！

$\boldsymbol{U}_{\boldsymbol{\jmath} \boldsymbol{ш о п ~}}$


Пшпп＇タ Ишглшะ，


L4t＇f
2шเก เпшр 5：




2．Form mini－dialogues according to the patterns in $a, b$ ，and $c$ ．Replace the words in




В．U．лா＇，ш！



3．Answer the following questions according to the pattern．








4．Build sentences following the pattern．







5. Complete the sentences, following the pattern.







6. Translate.
a. The weather is beautiful. Let's go out!
b. It's a cloudy day. Stay at home!
c. It's cold. Make sure you don't catch a cold!
d. It'll rain. Take an umbrella with you!
e. It's very windy and it's freezing. Take a warm coat!
f. There is thunder and lightning. Turn off the lights!
7. Form interrogative sentences with reference to the words in boldface.






8. How would you say it in Armenian? Discuss the weather in your country.
a. In winter
b. In spring
c. In fall
d. In summer
9. Complete the sentences by translating the words and phrases in parentheses.






10. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.







## XI PROVERBS


[Lun ught mi shinir]
Don't make a camel out of a flea!

[Tasə ch ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ap}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ir, mek k${ }^{2}$ trir]
Measure ten times, cut once!

[Kamatss ${ }^{b}$ g $^{2}$ na, vor shut hasnes]
Go slowly to arrive quickly.

[ $\mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}}$ rits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}{ }^{2} \mathrm{sk}^{2}$ sir, vor metsin hasnes!]
Start with the small to arrive at the tall.

## Unit 10



## On the Agenda ...

Speech Acts in Dialogues: Extending and accepting invitations ..... 220
Vocabulary: Holidays and recreation ..... 223
Grammar: Verbs: The hypothetical mood ..... 224
Pronouns: 1. Reciprocal pronouns ..... 230
2. Possessive pronouns ..... 230
3. Possessive forms of nouns ..... 231
4. Definite pronouns ..... 231
Syntax: Simple sentences in Armenian ..... 232
Armenian-English Contrasts: Negation in Armenian ..... 234
Word Formation: Formation of participles ..... 236
Pronunciation: The vowel -ц [ə] ..... 240
Orthography: Punctuation marks ..... 241

## I DIALOGUES

1. On the telephone. Lady A is inviting lady B to her house for supper.
 [Barev dzez, tikin Palyan, duk ${ }^{\text {b }}{ }^{\text {ek }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ]

[Barev, tikin Saryan]

How are you? What's new?


[Urp ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{b}}$ yereko azat ek ${ }^{\mathrm{d}}$ ?]

[Kuzeyi dzez yev dzer]

[amusnun 2nt $^{\text {th }}{ }^{\text {rik }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ hravirel]

[Mets hachuyk ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ov k $^{\text {² }}$ gayink $^{\mathrm{h}}$....,

[Yerekoyan zhamə yoth ${ }^{\text {th }}$ harmar e?]

[bayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ menk $^{\text {b }}$ menak chd ${ }^{\text {b }}$ enk $^{\text {b }}$,]

[hyur unenk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ Fransiayits ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} ; \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ uyr ${ }^{\text {r }} \mathrm{e}$ ] sister.

[Vochh incha ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$, dzer $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ rroch $^{\mathrm{h}} \mathrm{n}$ el berek ${ }^{\mathrm{h}}$ ]

[Uremn spasum enk ${ }^{4}$ dzez]

[Sh${ }^{\text {n }}$ norakal enk ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$. Minch $h^{\mathfrak{b}}$ urp $^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{at}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ]
2. $\boldsymbol{A}$ is inviting her friend $\boldsymbol{B}$ to a party for her parents' 50 th wedding anniversary.
 [Gohar, kuzeyir kiraki orə]

[indz ayts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ elel? Havak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ unem]

[Sirov. Inch ${ }^{\text {b }}$ arit ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ov?]

[Hors yev mors amusnut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yan]

[hisunerort ${ }^{\text {b }}$ taredarts ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ne}$ ]

[Nrants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ hamar anakənkal kə ${ }^{\text {² }}$ lini]
 [Iskapes? $\mathrm{K}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ani hok ${ }^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{u}$ es hravirel?]

[Hisun (hok ${ }^{\mathrm{b}}$ )]

[Aytk ${ }^{\text {b }}$ an tegh unes?]

[Mer partezum e linelu]

[Karogh em $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ ez voreve banov $\mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}}$ nel?]

[Shat shənorakal em]

[oknakan shat unem]

[Het ${ }^{2}$ t haykakan yerazh ${ }^{2}$ shtut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun ber]
B. U.
[Amenayn sirov]

[Urish inch ${ }^{\text {n }}$ kuzeyir, vor berem?]

[Mets akhorzhak]

[Anpayman k². ${ }^{\text {² }}$.
next Sunday? I'm having a party.

Gladly! What's the occasion?

It's my parents'

50th wedding anniversary.

It'll be a surprise for them.

Really? How many people have you invited?

Fifty (people).

Do you have that much room?

May I help you with anything?

Thank you very much,

I have a lot of help.

Bring some Armenian music with you. With great pleasure.

A big appetite!

I'll bring that for sure.

## II TEXT

## 














## III NEW WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

| $p^{\text {trint }}$ | [ $\mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{b}}$ erii] | uncle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ¢rmertl | [ $\mathrm{p}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ok}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{rik}$ ] | small |
|  | [ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{b}} \mathrm{ut}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{ak}$ ] | parrot |
|  | [tseruni] | old man |
|  | [vandak] | cage |
|  | [pahel] | to keep |
| шฯшип | [azat] | free |
|  | [ $\mathrm{t}^{\text {¢ }} \mathrm{rach}^{\text {b }}$ kotel] | to fly around |
|  | [ $p^{\text {b }}$ akhch $^{\text {b }} \mathrm{el}$ ] | to escape, to flee |
|  | [kanchb ${ }^{\text {el] }}$ ] | to call |
|  | [vortegh?] | where? |
| Smplemis | [harevan] | neighbor |
| แโ!nLit | [anun] | name |
| Prifte | [bərnel] | to catch |
| 4Гщш¢ | [gərpan] | pocket |
| $77^{\text {ctite }}$ | [dnel] | to put, to place |
|  | [ners mtnel] | to come in |

## IV THEMATIC GROUPS OF WORDS

| Sņbr | ［Toner］ | HOLIDAYS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ［taredarts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | anniversary，birthday |
|  | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {nunk }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | baptism |
|  | ［ts̊n ${ }^{\text {n }}$ ndyan taredarts］ | birthday anniversary |
|  | ［tonakhmbut ${ }^{\text {² }}$ yun］ | celebration，gathering |
|  | ［Surp ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ts${ }^{\text {® }}$ nund］ | Christmas |
| 2went 4 | ［Zatik］ | Easter |
| ¢ ¢ ¢ ¢ | ［nəshanadrut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | engagement（party） |
|  | ［hayreri or］ | Father＇s Day |
|  | ［hobelyan］ | jubilee |
|  | ［mayreri or］ | Mother＇s Day |
| Qпп ипшги | ［Nor tari］ | New Year |
|  | ［amusnut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yan taredarts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | wedding anniversary |
|  | ［harsanik ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | wedding |
| dU．UU．と3 | ［Zhamants ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | RECREATION |
|  | ［parahandes］ | ball，dance |
|  | ［chashkeruyt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | banquet |
| Sukirtu | ［handes］ | ceremony，gala |
| 4r4tu | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{\text {rkes］}}$ ］ | circus |
|  | ［mrts ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | competition |
| Suritip | ［hamerg］ | concert |
|  | ［khərakhchank ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | feast |
|  | ［navag ${ }^{\text {nats }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | cruising，sea voyage |
|  | ［kerukhum］ | feast |
|  | ［arshav］ | hiking |
|  | ［hyurasirut ${ }^{\text {d }}$ yun］ | hospitality |
|  | ［hraver］ | invitation |
| Дшшппп¢ | ［ $\mathrm{t}^{\mathrm{t}}$ atron］ | theatre |
| 414ヶп | ［kino］ | movie，cinema |
|  | ［dashtag ${ }^{\text {nats }}{ }^{\text {b }}$ ut ${ }^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | picnic |
|  | ［havak ${ }^{\text {b }}$ uyt $^{\text {b }}$ ，yerekuyt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | gathering，（evening）party |
| щиппьлип | ［ptuyt］ | stroll，walk |
|  | ［arts ${ }^{\text {a }}$ akurt ${ }^{\text {b }}$ ］ | vacation，holiday |
| ชш上イ！ | ［champort ${ }^{\text {b }} \mathrm{ut}^{\text {b }}$ yun］ | voyage，trip |

## V GRAMMAR

## A．VERBS

## I．The hypothetical mood

This mood expresses actions assumed to be hypothetical，yet probable and necessary．There are four hypothetical tenses：the hypothetical future I and II，the hypothetical past I and II．

## 1．Hypothetical future I

a）The affirmative paradigm of the hypothetical future I is formed by prefixing the conju－ gated personal forms of the subjunctive future（see p．150）with 4－．Compare：

All regular verbs follow the pattern given below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers．（tu） | 4＋verb stem＋$\downarrow \boldsymbol{\sim} /$ wi | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{2}+$ verb stem + em／am］ |
| 2nd pers．（\％ $\boldsymbol{H}_{\text {пL }}$ ） | $4+$ verb stem＋ 4 ¢ 4 ／ши | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{2}+$ verb stem + es／as］ |
| 3rd pers．（\％uw） | $4+$ verb stem $+1 / \boldsymbol{u}$ | $\left[\mathrm{k}^{2}+\right.$ verb stem $\left.+\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{a}\right]$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
| 1st pers．（fLLtp） | $4^{+}+$verb stem + tisp／witup | $\left[\mathrm{k}^{\text {a }}+\right.$ verb stem + enk ${ }^{\text {b }} /$ ank $\left.^{\text {b }}\right]$ |
|  |  | $\left[\mathrm{k}^{2}+\right.$ verb stem $\left.+\mathrm{ek}^{\mathrm{b}} / \mathrm{ak}^{\mathrm{b}}\right]$ |
| 3rd pers．（ $\boldsymbol{L}_{\boldsymbol{r}}$ | $4^{+}$verb stem＋ | ［ $\mathrm{k}^{2}+$ verb stem + en／an］ |

b）The negative paradigm of the hypothetical future I is formed by combining the negated

 will not read，etc．（see the paradigm below）．

## HYPOTHETICAL FUTURE I



| 4ш［r\％ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| affirmative | negative |
| 44шГワшィ |  |
| 44шгпши |  |
| 44шиワ |  |
|  |  |
| 44шгクшр |  |
| 44шгпши |  |

## 2．Hypothetical past I

a）The hypothetical past I uses the personal forms of the subjunctive past（see p．151）of the base verb，prefixing them with 4－．Compare：

| subjunctive past： | $4 r^{\text {rath }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| subjunctive past： | 4шハワш」！ | $\rightarrow$ hypothetical past I：44шппш」！ |

All regular verbs follow the pattern below：

| SINGULAR |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & {\left[\mathrm{k}^{2}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { eyi } / \text { ayi }\right]} \\ & {\left[\mathrm{k}^{2}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { eyir } / \text { ayir }\right]} \\ & {\left[\mathrm{k}^{\partial}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { er } / \mathrm{ar}\right]} \end{aligned}$ |
| PLURAL |  |  |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & {\left[k^{\partial}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { eyink }^{\mathrm{b}} / \text { ayink }^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {\left[\mathrm{k}^{\partial}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { eyik }{ }^{\mathrm{b}} / \text { ayik }^{\mathrm{b}}\right]} \\ & {\left[\mathrm{k}^{\partial}+\text { verb stem }+ \text { eyin/ayin }\right]} \end{aligned}$ |

b）The negative paradigm of the hypothetical past I is analogous to the negative paradigm of the hypothetical future I．It combines the negated past forms of the auxiliary $\boldsymbol{L u s}$ ，i．e． $5 \boldsymbol{H}$ $\rightarrow 25 h$ with the negative participle of the base verb： $25 / 4 \pi / 2$ I would not write， $25 / \Gamma$


## HYPOTHETICAL PAST I

|  | $41^{15}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | affirmative | negative |
| （tu） | $44 r^{15}$ |  |
| （7пL） |  | $25 ¢ 5$ 7r月 |
| （\％ши） | $47 r^{15}$ | 25\％4r\％ |
|  | $47 r^{\text {ritinde }}$ | 25／isp 4 \％ |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\sim} \times \mathrm{L}$ ） | $44 r^{\text {rexem }}$ | 25he 4 ¢ |
|  | 47 ratis |  |

4ш！ワш」
affirmative negative
 44шгпишлиг 25 44шппшг




## 3．Hypothetical future II and hypothetical past II

In addition to the two primary tenses of the hypothetical mood，hypothetical future I and hypothetical past I ，there is a pair of secondary tenses，which we will call hypothetical future II and hypothetical past II．They combine the corresponding hypothetical future I
 ticiple ending，in－шょ or－шишд（see p．236）of the base verb．

All regular verbs follow the pattern given below：

| SINGULAR |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| （tu） |  |
| （7пL） |  |
| （\％иш） |  |
| PLURAL |  |
| （fltstu） |  |
| $(\boldsymbol{q} \boldsymbol{\square} \times \boldsymbol{p}$ ） |  |
| （ $\Sigma_{1}$ |  |

## HYPOTHETICAL FUTURE II

HYPOTHETICAL PAST II

## 

| （tu） | 4пи\％or |  | $4 \square^{\text {¢ }}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| （\％ロレ） | 4Гшб or |  |  | or ¢шгワшушன | 41／5ithr |
| （£шレ） | 4Г年立 or |  | 4Гшб | or ¢шГワшушб |  |
| （ıLLT．P） | 4！ш\％or |  | $4 \square^{\text {¢ }}$ | or ¢шгワшушன | 41／istorict |
|  | 4Гアш\％or |  |  |  | 41／istre |
| （ $\Sigma_{\text {LILILIL }}$ | 4Гшб or |  | 4Гшன | or Чшгワшлшன | 41／istoris |

## 4．Formation of the negative paradigms

For the negative forms，this set of hypothetical tenses uses the corresponding hypothetical
 unchanged past participle（ending in－шд or－шушд）（see p．236）of the base verb：чпшш



## 5. Uses of the hypothetical future I

In East Armenian grammars, the hypothetical mood is also referred to as the suppositional, conditional and even assertional mood. This confirms the diversity of meanings that this mood imparts to the verb. English does not have a comparable mood, although the hypothetical mood, for the most part, can be easily translated into English.
a) The hypothetical future I denotes the speaker's strong belief that actions or events will take place at a given time in the future:

Spring will come again, the world will come into bloom, and we will win.
b) The hypothetical future I expresses the speaker's determination, intention or promise to perform certain actions:

I'll go right now, I'll find this man and bring him back.
In that sense, it appears more often in negative forms:

## 

I will not leave my country, I will not go to unknown places (i.e. I refuse to go).
c) Forms in the second person can appear in orders:

And now you will go and apologize to everybody.
d) The hypothetical future I appears in main clauses followed or preceded by a conditional clause with a verb in the subjunctive mood:

I will work, if you will also work. If you try, I will also try.
e) With reference to the present time, both the affirmative and negative forms of this tense can indicate the speaker's assumption, guess or supposition:

At this time, they won't be at home.
He must have a lot of money.
f) In some contexts, this tense denotes recurrent actions and events. It then loses its hypothetical meaning, resembling rather the present tense of the indicative mood:

She'll look at your face and laugh; she'll never feel ashamed.

This meaning of regularity allows this tense to be widely used in Armenian proverbs:

The dog recognizes its master.

A dog does not eat another dog's flesh.

## 6. Uses of the hypothetical past I

a) In some contexts, the hypothetical past $I$ is used to express recurrent activity in the past. In this case, it loses its hypothetical meaning and resembles the past tenses of the indicative mood:

When everybody went to sleep, she would take her doll and talk to her.
b) Another instance where the hypothetical past I loses its hypothetical status and obtains a meaning that resembles the indicative mood is the following: A temporal clause intro-
 sentence featuring the aorist tense:
 By the time I could utter a word, he opened the door and left.
c) The hypothetical past I expresses contrary-to-fact actions. Hence its frequent use in conditional sentences that leave the question open as to whether a condition is met. In most cases, the hypothetical past I forms correspond to English I would constructions:
 If I saw him, I would definitely recognize him.

I would read the novel, if I had time.
d) Since the hypothetical past I indicates non-factuality and uncertainty, both affirmative and negative second-person forms are frequently used to express advice or reproach:
b/马t If I were you I wouldn't leave, but at least before leaving I would say goodbye.
e) In polite interaction, the hypothetical past I applies to the present time. Thus, $4 \pi\left\llcorner\boldsymbol{q}^{t} \boldsymbol{\square} \ldots\right.$
 are forms of politeness. While asking someone for a favor, Armenian affirmative and negative forms are synonymous. Compare:
 Excuse me, could you tell me the time?
f) In rhetorical questions initiated by this tense, great expressivity is achieved:
 Who would think that ..., Who wouldn't wish ..., Who would dare ... etc.

## 7. Uses of the hypothetical future II

a) The hypothetical future II indicates an action or an event that the speaker expects to have been completed at some point in the future. Compare:

By tomorrow, everything will be finished.
b) Marking the future tense is not the main function of the hypothetical future II. It is chiefly used to indicate an assumption, guess, or supposition. In this case, it is rendered in English by constructions that contain may/might, should, and must:

You must have seen this picture. (I suppose.)

The plane may have arrived already. (I suppose.)
Several synonymous constructions are interchangeable:

You must have heard ... (I suppose.)

You must have seen ... (I suppose.)

You must have read (this). (I suppose.)

## 8. Uses of the hypothetical past II

The hypothetical past II is commonly used to express an action or an event that could have but did not take place due to an unfulfilled condition:

I would have read the book if I had liked it. (But I didn't like it.)

If the weather had been nice, the airplane would have flown. (But it wasn't nice.)

## B. PRONOUNS

## 1. Reciprocal pronouns

Reciprocal pronouns designate objects connected with each other by action or state. These



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { They love each other. Sen and Ani are friends (with each other). }
\end{aligned}
$$

Reciprocal pronouns are declined and appear in sentences with case markers as governed by verbs and adjectives. Compare:

They take pride in each other.

You are very far from each other.

## 2. Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns are derived from possessive adjectives that function as determiners.
 sive pronouns stand for nouns, taking on the definite article - $\boldsymbol{\square}$ after consonants and after vowels.* Note that rather than $-\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ the second option $-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ or lowed by a word with an initial vowel.

| 1st | \%u | $\rightarrow$ huf | $\rightarrow \boldsymbol{L u s}$ | Htute | $\rightarrow$ +itr | $\rightarrow$ WLILL |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2n | $\boldsymbol{7}$ | $\rightarrow \mathrm{f}^{\prime \prime}$ | $\rightarrow$ ¢ ${ }_{\text {Prin }}$ | $7 \boldsymbol{7} \times$ | $\rightarrow \alpha L_{\Gamma}$ | $\rightarrow$ drere |
| 3 rc | a) 1 HL | $\rightarrow \mathrm{lr}$ | $\rightarrow$ hritic | hritue | $\rightarrow$ hrisug | $\rightarrow$ hritige |
|  | b) $\Psi_{1}$ | $\rightarrow \Sigma_{\text {Ir }}$ |  | $\varepsilon_{10}$ | $\rightarrow \Sigma_{\text {r }}$ | $\rightarrow$ Eriminge |

## Examples:

Uu fuf qfreer 25:
This isn't my book.

This is his/her pencil. I don't want his/hers.

Here is your picture, but ours is missing.

Uи fitis 5:
Is this mine?
คпLLL Luf nLqпLuf: I want yours.

This is yours, isn't it?

[^33]
## 3．Possessive forms of nouns

To avoid repetition of a previously mentioned proper noun，Armenian uses possessive forms of nouns，i．e．compact one－word nouns that stand for both the noun and a newly introduced genitive attribute：

## 

Mariam＇s birthday is in March，Aram＇s（that of Aram）in May．
Possessive forms of nouns are derived from the genitive case form．They are created by adding to the genitive form the ending－ $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_{[L}$ ．This applies equally to common and proper nouns．Most nominalized words of other word classes（see p．285）follow this pattern as well．As seen above，the basic English equivalent is a genitive form with the ending－＇s， although the meaning of Armenian possessive forms can be more adequately rendered by analytical constructions．Examples：




## 4．Definite pronouns

Definite pronouns serve to single out or identify an object or a group of objects in a particu－ lar context．Definite pronouns consist of two subclasses，one subclass representing determin－ ers used before nouns，and the other，regular pronouns that stand for nouns．

## DETERMINERS

แนเட\＆every
ш上fпク\＆all，（the）entire
「пリпl
st решй some，a few


## Genuine Pronouns

## Examples：

 Had all students arrived？Yes，all of them were present．Each of them spoke out．
 Have you read the entire book？Not the entire（book）．Just a few pages．Only a few？

Do all students think that way？No，not all of them share the same opinion．

## C. SYNTAX

Simple sentences in Armenian
A traditional simple sentence consists of only one independent clause. As discussed earlier (see Unit 2, p. 34), in a simple Armenian clause, be it a statement, question, or command, the conjugated verb typically occupies the final position. The following examples illustrate the most common patterns of Armenian simple statement clauses, with the verb indicated by $(\mathrm{V})$. Other components include subject $(\mathrm{S})$, direct object $\left(\mathrm{O}_{1}\right)$, indirect object $\left(\mathrm{O}_{2}\right)$, complement (C), and adverb (A).

(Guest ${ }_{\text {the/nom }}$ came)
The guest came.

(We door ${ }_{\text {the/acc }}$ closed)
We closed the door.

([I] coffee the/acc $^{\text {milk }_{\text {instr }} \text { drank) }}$
I drank coffee with milk.

(Friend ${ }_{\text {mine/nom }}$ our city ${ }_{\text {abl }}$ left)
My friend left our city.

(The-children nom us $_{\text {dat }}$ flowers $_{\text {acc }}$ brought)
The children brought us flowers.

(Mother ${ }_{\text {mine/nom }}$ meal $_{\text {acc }}$ table $_{\text {dat }}$ put)
My mother put the meal on the table.
Although these are the normal patterns of simple clauses in East Armenian, word order is not fixed. Clause elements can change their place in each of the above-listed clauses, depending on choices a speaker makes to stress one particular component of the sentence. Thus, pattern 2 can easily change from SOV to




In any of the patterns on p. 232, the verb is presented by a simple verbal tense. More often these patterns appear with complex tenses that are formed by the auxiliary $t i f(a u x)$ plus a participle (part) of the basic verb:
 We are closing / have closed / will close the door.
To stress a component of such a clause, inversion is obligatory whereby the stressed element is moved to an initial position of the clause and is followed immediately by the conjugated auxiliary verb (see p. 35). As for the participle, it may occupy various positions, but it never appears before the auxiliary verb.

Any of the patterns discussed on p. 232 could be affected by inversion provided it contains a compound tense, whereby the verb (V) is presented by the auxiliary+participle (aux+part).

## Compare pattern 2 :


We have closed the door. (Or: It's we who have closed the door.)

We have closed the door. (Or: We did close the door.)

We have closed the door. (Or: It's the door that we have closed.)

## Compare pattern 3:

 I will drink the coffee with milk. (Or: It's me who will drink the coffee with milk.)

I will drink the coffee with milk. (Or: It's the coffee that I will drink with milk.)

I will drink the coffee with milk. (Or: It's with milk that I will drink the coffee.)

## Compare pattern 4:


My friend is leaving the city. (Or: It's my friend who is leaving the city.)

My friend is leaving the city. (Or: My friend is [indeed] leaving the city.)

My friend is leaving the city. (Or: It's the city that my friend is leaving.)

## VI ARMENIAN-ENGLISH CONTRASTS

## Negation in Armenian

1. Affirmative forms of verbs in Armenian are easily transformed into negative ones by placing the negative particle $\left\{-\left[\operatorname{ch}^{\boldsymbol{b}}\right]\right.$ before verbs. The negative particle $\mathcal{z}$ - is never stressed. When prefixed to an initial consonant, it is followed by a transitory [ $\left.{ }^{2}\right]=\left[\mathrm{ch}^{\boldsymbol{b}}{ }^{2}\right]$.
a) $\mathcal{z}^{-}$is prefixed to the infinitive and to most of the independent participles:


b) $\mathfrak{z}^{-}$is prefixed to the conjugated verb, both base verb and auxiliary:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 4ragh I have written } \rightarrow \text { 24rょgh I haven't written }
\end{aligned}
$$




d) There are two alternatives for the 3rd-person singular form of the auxiliary $t \boldsymbol{\iota}: \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \boldsymbol{h}$ and 25. $\boldsymbol{9} \boldsymbol{f}$ is restricted to verbal negation in conjugation:

For all other negations, the regular form $\{5$ is used:
Spulwnr 5 helshe is ill $\rightarrow$ Shlwsur 25 helshe is not ill,


2. The prohibitive imperative uses the unattached and stressed negative particle $\stackrel{\sim}{\boldsymbol{f}} \boldsymbol{r}^{\prime}$ don't which is placed before regular imperative forms.





[^34]3. A means of negation at the sentence level is $n \boldsymbol{n} n o$.
a) $n_{\mathcal{\xi}}$ can be used alone as a one-word sentence or may introduce a full negative response:
\[

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { "Did the airplane arrive?" "No." or "No, it hasn't arrived." }
\end{aligned}
$$
\]




He was not killed but wounded.
Negation is reinforced using the emphatic correlative conjunction n'₹ ... $\left.n^{\prime}\right\}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { You neither eat, nor drink. There is no night or day for you. }
\end{aligned}
$$

4. Unlike English, double, and even triple negation is standard for East Armenian. This

 negative verb forms:

They never informed me about it. (Literally: They never didn't inform me about it.)

## 

Nobody understood anything. (Literally: Nobody didn't understand nothing.)
A double negation can produce affirmation, if one of the negated components is an infinitive prefixed with $\mathfrak{z}$-:

## 

I must go. I want to participate. (Lit.: I can't not go. I don't want not to participate.)
5. To seek consent or invite confirmation, sentences can end with tag questions similar to the English ..., isn't it? that directly follow affirmative sentences. Positive tag questions ..., is it? follow negative sentences. Unlike English, however, Armenian always employs neg-


The weather is nice, isn't it?

You won't leave, will you?

## VII WORD FORMATION

## A. Formation of participles

Armenian has two sets of participles.
I. The first set consists of four participles that are bound for use in conjugation paradigms. As such, they are never used independently but only in combination with the corresponding forms of the auxiliary verb $t \iota^{\circ}$ in its affirmative and negative forms.

1) The present participle ending in -m










 going to write/I was not going to read, etc. (see pp. 124-125).

 write/I would not read, etc. (see pp. 224-225).
II. The second set consists of four free participles that function independently in sentences as adjectives, nouns or adverbs:

 is reading a newspaper.

 who has read the newspaper.

 newspaper that my neighbor will read．

For the most part，all these participles have no parallel structures in English and are ren－ dered，as the examples show，by relative clauses．Armenian has the choice of both：the par－ ticiple and the relative clause：

the city that is being built

the city that has been built

the city that will be built
4）The temporal or synchronical participle has a predominantly independent adverbial use although it can also appear in secondary conjugation paradigms．It is formed by adding the
 ing．This participle expresses an action concurrent to the main action：


！

## B．Nominalization of participles

Armenian adjectival participles（see p．236，1，2， 3 under II）can readily nominalize．In this case，they acquire the features of a noun and appear with the definite article－ $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ or the possessive article $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\eta}$ ，$-\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ or $-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ ，etc．，with the plural ending－ $\boldsymbol{E}_{\boldsymbol{L}} \boldsymbol{L}_{[\boldsymbol{r}}$ ，and various case markers．Since adjectival participles are of verbal origin，they can also appear with the negation prefix $\boldsymbol{\xi}$－．Nominalized participles follow the $-\boldsymbol{\beta}$ declension of nouns．

1）Nominalized participles ending in $\boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{\pi} \boldsymbol{Z}$ refer to a person engaged in an activity．Consider the following examples：

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { with the definite article -г: ןипиппп - he who speaks }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { with the plural suffix -世虎: }
\end{aligned}
$$

Such nminalizations appear in all sentence positions．Consider the following example in subject position：

He who works never stays hungry．

Nominalized participles ending in $\boldsymbol{- m \boldsymbol { Z }}$ appear with case markers:
funungh Stun - with someone who speaks
Thus, more complex agglutinated forms can occur:

$\varepsilon$ -
Compare the Armenian saying using the nominalized participle in the ablative case:

## 

Beware of those who do not speak.
 and events.* As such, participles ending in -шょ appear:

«ъшшдц - what I see/saw/have seen/will see**
with the plural marker - $\mathrm{K}_{\boldsymbol{L}_{1}} \mathrm{u}$ :

with both a plural and case marker:

Since the possessive article occurs in all forms indicating person and number, -шд forma-
 needed:

| ぃпьшшди |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

what I see, saw, will see what you see, saw, will see what he/she see, saw, will see what we see, saw, will see what you see, saw, will see what they see, saw, will see
 шп\& $\Sigma t_{L}$ to take, etc.) can build this type of nominalization.
 or future time.
 he/she sees/saw/will see, etc.



The same formations may be prefixed with the negation marker $\mathcal{q}$ :

|  | at I don't see, didn't see, won't see |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | what you don't see, didn't see, won't see |
|  | what I don't see, didn't see, won't see, |


 indicate objects, facts, and events - as usually with $-\boldsymbol{\boldsymbol { \sigma } _ { \Gamma }}$ — but the person in the indi-
 who is tired, $\boldsymbol{p}^{\varepsilon_{\mu}} \boldsymbol{\sigma}_{\square}$ the one who is asleep are functionally closer to those nominalizations


Compare the Armenian proverb:

(He who is ) asleep and (he who is) dead are just the same.
Given that brevity is one of their most important characteristics, proverbs make extensive use of the nominalized participles.Compare the $-\boldsymbol{\omega} \boldsymbol{\delta}_{\boldsymbol{Z}}$ noun in a declined form (dative):

## 

There is no remedy for what the tongue has wounded.
Some proverbs include various types of these formations simultaneously:

## 

He who says what he wants, will hear what he does not want.
3) Participles ending in $-\boldsymbol{f} \boldsymbol{f}$ can also appear as a noun, using the endings $-\boldsymbol{\mu},-\boldsymbol{\eta},-\boldsymbol{\Sigma} /-\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}$ :

I am saying what he have to say, but it will happen what is bound to happen.
4) Armenian has a group of participial forms going back to declined forms of the infinitive in various cases.






## 

You do not learn a language by reading, you learn it by speaking.

## VIII PRONUNCIATION

## The vowel $\_$[ə]

The vowel $\boldsymbol{Z}_{[ }[ə]$ is the only vowel in Armenian that is never stressed. It is pronounced in various positions of words, but is not always expressed graphically. For its pronunciation, the following rules must be observed:

1. $\_$[ $\quad$ ] is always written:






2. $\quad$ [ $\left.{ }^{\circ}\right]$ is slightly pronounced, but not written:
a) in initial position of some words, before $\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{q}$, followed by the stops $\boldsymbol{f}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{q}, \underset{\boldsymbol{p}}{ }, \underset{4}{ }$,
 lation, $4 \boldsymbol{q}^{2} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{L}\left[{ }^{2}\right.$ zgal] to feel, etc.
b) in initial position of words, after $\underset{\mathcal{L}}{ }, \boldsymbol{2}$, and $\boldsymbol{\nu}$ when non-stop consonants follow: $\boldsymbol{\nu}$



 tsel] to think, etc.
d) in initial clusters of three consonants, an $\underset{\square}{ }$ [ə] is pronounced after the first consonant:
 [gəndak] ball (toy), qшшццц [zə spel] to curb, etc.
e) in initial clusters of four or five consonants, an $\left.\underset{\Sigma}{ }{ }^{2}\right]$ is pronounced after the first con-


 heavy, шшпп [ast${ }^{\text {ght }}$ ] star, цшдп [vagr] tiger, etc.
g) in final position of words, when consonants are followed by the personal articles $-\boldsymbol{u}$


## IX ORTHOGRAPHY

## Punctuation marks

Armenian has a distinct set of punctuation marks:
 tence.
2. [,] The Armenian шипппш位и [storaket] comma is used:
a) to mark off similar elements, i.e. words, phrases or clauses in a list or sequence where there are either no conjunctions or only a final one;

You brought roses, lilies, and carnations.
When listing nouns, phrases, and sentences, Armenian does not use a comma before the conjunctions $\boldsymbol{\iota}$ or mı and:

He came home, had dinner, rested a little, and left again.
b) to separate subordinate from main clauses:

When I saw you, it was already late.
Unlike English, Armenian also separates subordinate clauses that follow the main clause:

I will come if I have time.
c) after exclamations and direct address:

Ani, open the door!

a) to replace omitted words:

## 

You will go home, and I [will go] to work.
b) to separate words that are drawn together because of missing words:

(Literally: My [] to you given book where is?)
Where is the book that I gave you?
c) to separate a word from its apposition:

Mrs. Sarian, my teacher, is here.

a) to link clauses that are connected to each other in some way. In that sense, it corresponds to the English semicolon (;):

I was tired; I decided to rest.
b) to indicate what will follow in a sequence. In that sense, it replaces the English colon:

## 

My question is: where did you go?
c) to anticipate direct speech before quotation marks (see below, 5 a ):
d) to mark abbreviated words:

Mr. Palian

a) to open and close quoted material, a word, phrase, sentence or passage from a book or direct speech:

You said:"I am very glad."
Note that in a dialogue, quotation marks are replaced by a long dash, especially when the answer immediately follows the question:

b) to highlight book titles:

Shakespeare's Hamlet.
c) in ironic comments to imply that a word is used in its opposite meaning:

I have seen many of such "friends."

Everybody knows how "honest" you are.

## X EXERCISES

1. Combine words from the left column with appropriate words from the right column.

b. G[RI п[ qши,

d. Splifis ULliu,





















2. Answer the questions with a negative response. Follow the pattern.







3. Answer the questions according to the pattern.







4. Insert the reciprocal pronoun $\boldsymbol{h}^{1} \Gamma^{\prime}$ in the appropriate form.







5. Insert the appropriate verb form, following the pattern.







6. Translate into Armenian.
a. You're a good student, but you're late every day.
b. This has to come to an end!
c. It's not nice to make me wait here for hours.
d. If I were you, I'd finish this story.
e. You should not have done this.
f. Don't make me laugh!
7. How would you say it in Armenian?
a. Invite your best friend to your new apartment.
b. Accept an invitation to a friend's birthday.
c. Politely decline a friend's invitation to a party.
d. Give reasons for not being able to go to a friend's graduation banquet.
e. You are a host(ess). How do you offer food/drinks to an official guest? To a friend?
f. You are a guest. How do you accept/refuse food/drinks?
g. You are a guest. How do you offer your assistance to the host(ess)?
8. Answer the following questions with reference to the TEXT in this unit.









## XI PROVERBS


First the bread, then the questions.
(Message: When people are hungry, feeding them should be a priority.)

An unwanted guest will sit on thorns.

## 

The guest will go away, but the soot will stay.

It is the hostess who treats or mistreats the guest.
 He goes like water, but stays like sand.
(About guests who proceed to leave, yet linger at the door.)


[^0]:    
    
     lit．：Good light！，i．e．expression extending the good wishes to the next day．

[^1]:    * In the flow of speech some Armenian words are drawn together and pronounced as one word. This feature, also called liaison (see Unit 9, pp. 213-214), is designated by the sign $\smile$ in the transcription of the first four units.

[^2]:    ＊Normally，Armenian finite forms do not necessarily require personal pronouns（ $\boldsymbol{\epsilon \boldsymbol { u } , \boldsymbol { \eta } \boldsymbol { \eta } \boldsymbol { \tau } , \text { etc．）as }}$ the expressive personal forms of the conjugated verb（ $\boldsymbol{\iota}_{\boldsymbol{L},}, \boldsymbol{t} \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{5}$ ，etc．）make them redundant．

[^3]:    

[^4]:    
    

[^5]:    ＊Note that in the conjugation paradigm of regular verbs（see p．31）for the third person singular $\varepsilon / \boldsymbol{k}$
    
    

[^6]:    ＊See the note on p． 30.

[^7]:     Armenian．Modern Armenian has dropped the final－$£$ in the singular，retaining it in the plural form．
    ＊＊Note that in the plural［ ${ }^{2}$ ］is reduced；these nouns form their plural like regular monosyllabic nouns．

[^8]:    ＊Note that rules of reversed word order apply not only to the present tense but to all compound tenses that are formed by the auxiliary verb＂Lsf．＂This also includes the following tenses：the indicative imperfect（see Unit 3，pp．52－53），indicative perfect and pluperfect（Unit 5，pp．96－100），and indicative future（Unit 6，pp．124－ 126）．
    ＊＊Compare here the word order in English and Armenian：While it differs in affirmation，it coincides in negation．

[^9]:    *These alterations are discussed in Unit 5, pp. 107-108.

[^10]:    цш'ци: or: Ицұшпии: or: цш'л:
    [Vakh! or: Ap ${ }^{\boldsymbol{4}}$ sos! or: Vay!]
    Woe! or: Alas! or: Ouch!

[^11]:    ＊Armenian has no grammatical gender（see p． 57 in this unit）．
    ＊＊Regarding the distinction Armenian makes for personal pronouns in the third person，see p． 57 in this unit．

[^12]:    * Compare the use of the definite articles - $\_$and - $\quad$ (Unit 1, pp. 13-14).
    ** The plural forms have two meanings. Thus, untriu means both my houses and our house, the latter usage being restricted to colloquial speech. For our house, in standard Armenian the analytical form
    
    

[^13]:    ＊See the table of irregular verbs in the Appendix（pp．334－335）．

[^14]:    *English nouns change forms either to express possession or when they are used in the plural (cf. father's, fathers).

[^15]:    ＊See Unit 4，pp．74－76
    ＊＊See Unit 3，pp．53－54．

[^16]:    * Synonymous sentences describing weather conditions have a subject, but still lack reference to the doer of the action:
    
    [Andzrev / karkut / dzyun e galis, etc.] It is raining / hailing / snowing, etc.

[^17]:    * Note that here ${ }_{\square}\left[{ }^{2}\right]$ is pronounced, but not written, except in hyphenation (see Unit 9, p. 215.)

[^18]:    * $\boldsymbol{\emptyset}$ stands for the complete reduction of the vowel.

[^19]:    

[^20]:    
    **Ablative forms such as $\boldsymbol{\sim} \boldsymbol{L}_{4}$

[^21]:    

[^22]:    ＊In current every－day speech，plural imperative forms derived from the infinitive stem are also common．
    
    ＊＊The singular imperative has a variety of irregular endings and forms（see Appendix，table of irregular verb， pp．334－335）．

[^23]:    
    

[^24]:    * Ungrammatical sentences in English are marked with an asterisk

[^25]:    * Affricate: a complex sound that consists of a stop and a sibilant (note their romanization).

[^26]:    
    

[^27]:    * Some nouns indicating professions have female counterparts formed by the suffix -пь $\varsigma \boldsymbol{\mu}$ [-uhi]:
    
    

[^28]:    * The plural paradigm is restricted to colloquial speech.

[^29]:    ＊Many non－standard English dialects have three demonstratives（cf．this，that，yon／yonder）corre－ sponding to Early Modern English（cf．the Shakespearean here，there，yonder）．Compare also the Spanish demonstratives este，ese，aquel and the Latin hic，iste，ille．

[^30]:    ＊Note that the two paradigms，affirmative and negative，differ not only in the word order but also in the way negation of the 3rd person singular is formed：$\uparrow \downarrow$ vs．$\uparrow 5$ ．

[^31]:    * Armenian has two pronouns for the question 'where' 1. $\Pi_{\Gamma^{1} u} t^{\circ} \eta$ inquires about the location of someone or
     he go? Compare the German 'wo?' and 'wohin?'

[^32]:    * Note that in this section the stress sign ['] is used for phonetic purposes only, except for the prohibitive forms on the next page under 5 .

[^33]:    * Exceptions: $\boldsymbol{h} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{u} \boldsymbol{u}$ as a second option for the regular $\boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}$.

[^34]:    
    ** To transform affirmative paradigms into negative ones, Armenian does not use a verb equivalent to the English auxiliary verb to do.

